

Aikenova R. A., Rustimova S.G., Kuntubaeva G.O.

**INCREASING STUDENTS' MOTIVATION IN STUDYING THE  
ENGLISH DISCIPLINE USING THE MODERN EDUCATIONAL  
TECHNOLOGIES**

Educational and methodical textbook

Nur-Sultan 2019

УДК: 811.111

ББК: 81.2 English

Reviewers: Candidate of Philology, associate Professor  
Kazakh Agrotechnical University by S.Seifullin- Kapanova D.A;  
Candidate of Philology, associate Professor  
Pavlodar Innovative University of Eurasia - Karimova K.K;  
Doctor of Philology, Professor Abisheva K.M., Turan-Astana University

Educational and methodical textbook “Increasing students’ motivation in studying the English discipline using the modern educational technologies”  
Aikenova R. A., Rustimova S.G., Kuntubaeva G.O.

This educational and methodical textbook contains methodological material, text material, a series of exercises aimed at the development of skills and abilities to work with foreign language text, didactic material for skills development speaking, as well as a brief grammar guide, equipped with memos, instructions, notes, etc., helping the trainees work independently. The manual is intended for students who continue to study English at the University at the stage of bachelor's degree, as well as for a wide range of English learners.

Approved and approved for publication by the educational and methodical Council of “Turan-Astana” University.

Protocol No. \_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ 2019.

## CONTENT

<b>Annotation</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>1. Introduction</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>1.1. Motivation and its psychological features</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>2. The use of modern and educational technologies contributing to the increase of motivation</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>2.1 New approaches in learning and teaching</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>2.2. Learning of critical thinking</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>2.3 The use of IT in teaching</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>3. Conclusions</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>4. Practical exercises</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>5. Reading</b>	<b>157</b>
<b>Bibliography</b>	

## ANNOTATION

Nowadays the knowledge of English language has become not only a necessity, but it is also in-demand. Social, political, economic, and cultural transformation have led to changes in the field of education. Today every citizen should know in not one language, so the knowledge of English language with subject integration is necessary, as our young people should easily orientate themselves to modern world. Thus, **the relevance** of learning English language is determined by needs of the modern world. Today foreign language becomes a life support of society. The role of a foreign language increases due to the development of economic relations. Learning foreign language and foreign language literacy of our citizens contribute to the formation of the proper image of a citizen in abroad allowing to break down barriers of distrust, and enables(gives an opportunity) to carry and spread our culture and to learn others. As a significant element of culture of the nation, foreign language contributes to the formation of students' holistic worldview. Knowing a foreign language increases not only the level of students' liberal education, but also contributes to the formation of personality and its social adaptation to the conditions of constantly (always) changing multicultural and Multilanguage world.

In order to master a language at a new qualitative level, one should use English language as a tool in learning various subjects. At the present stage, the interest in learning language began to increase not only among adults engaged in business, but also among students having set their goals to pursue high-quality education and to become highly qualified experts. Today's (modern) enterprises of our country lack highly qualified experts who can speak in business English.

## 1. INTRODUCTION

In recent years the question about use of pedagogical technologies in educational process is often raised. It's not just new technical means, but new forms and methods of teaching, a new approach to the educational process. The main aim of teaching foreign languages is to form and to develop students' communicative culture, to help them to actually master foreign language.

According to E.S. Polat, teacher's aim is to create conditions of actual mastering foreign language for every student, to choose the methods of education that would allow every student to demonstrate his or her potential and creativity. Teacher's goal is to step up student's cognitive activity in the educational process of English language. Modern pedagogical technologies, such as collaborative learning, project methodology, use of new information technologies, and Internet resources help to implement a person-oriented approach in education and provide individualization and differentiation education taking into account students' ability, their educational level, penchants and etc.

In order to improve students' educational process and successfully apply modern pedagogical technologies at the lessons of yours, it is required to increase students' motivation in studying foreign language.

Multidimensionality, polysemy of notion of «motivation of learning», its significance in development form of educational collaboration determined(?) choice of research theme, the problem of which is in recognizing opportunity and development of students' motivation of learning in process of studying English language .

**Object of study:** the process of learning English language as a holistic system.

**Subject of study:** new pedagogical technologies as a means of formation of increasing motivation for learning English language.

**Aim of study:** to give theoretical foundation and development of pedagogical conditions providing the use of new pedagogical technologies in universities through the motives amplification of studying subject of «English language».

**Hypothesis of study:** modern pedagogical technologies contributes to increasing motivation of learning English language, to improving knowledge and students' culture, and under certain conditions, they can effectively be used in educational process for learning English language. In the present work, I will be telling about the aspect of using modern pedagogical technologies in detail that contributing to increasing students' motivation of studying English language.

#### **Tasks of study.**

According the aims we decided the next research subjects:

1. To study information motivation.
2. To consider essence of modern pedagogical technologies;
3. To study an impact of pedagogical technologies on motivation of education ;
4. To understand how to increase students' level of motivation using modern pedagogical technologies at the lessons of English language in universities.

**Methods of study:** critical analysis, scientific and fixed observation, experiment, questionnaire survey, conversation, interview.

**Methodological base.** For solving **assigned** tasks there are :

- ✓ Modern concept of a person-oriented education;
- ✓ Studying motivation of educational activity;

✓ Concept of informatization education ;

**Scientific newness of study** is that what modern pedagogical technologies contribute to increasing motivation to study English language and to improving students' knowledge.

### **1.1. MOTIVATION AND ITS PSYCHOLOGICAL FEATURES**

To successfully use students' education one should be able to get motivated to study. The main reasons that encourage you to do any actions are inner promptings on which it depends purposeful temper of actions. As is known, motivation of learning is a great importance in organization of educational process. It is motivation that causes purposeful activity and that's why it's called "launching mechanism" of any human's activity: it can be work, communication or cognition. It contributes to activating thinking, and it arouses interest to one or the other kind of occupations, to perform one or the other exercise.

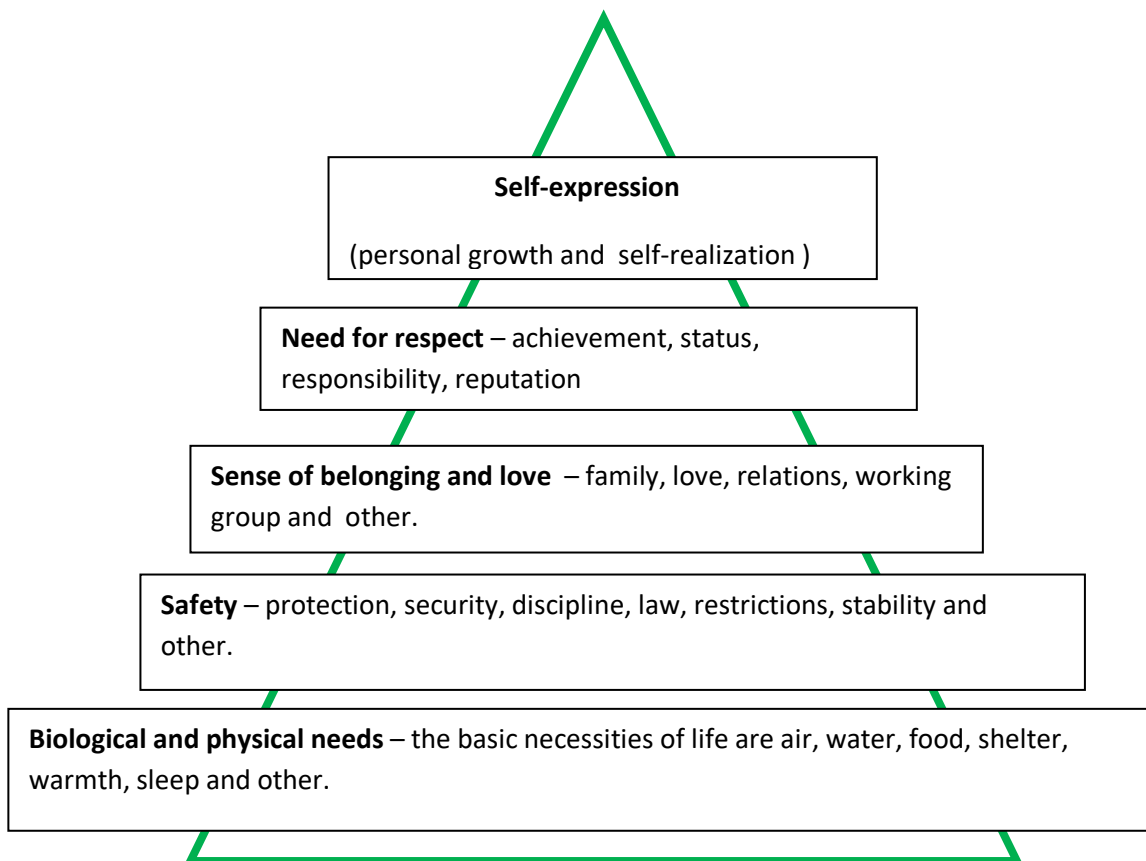
There is motivational problem in every subject in universities. However, the most problematic one is motivation of studying English language in universities. Before studying English language and at the very beginning, those who study in school, schoolchildren, usually have a strong motivation. They want to speak in English, to recite poems, to sing songs and to read books. But when the process of mastering English language begins, learners' attitude to it changes, many of them are disappointed. For students who have entered an university with poor knowledge base, this process means to gather knowledge during the period, to overcome various obstacles that discourage to achieve planned aims. As a result motivation is decreased, activity is lost, and academic performance is also decreased, which negatively affects on motivation.

Let's see what motivations is all about.

The word «motivation» has Latin origin, which in Russian means “to encourage doing something”.

*Motivation* is a process of stimulating certain kind of activity that is directed to reach any goal.

Famous scholar, Abraham Maslow, developed hierarchical model of motivation. At the lower level, he arranged physical needs, and at the higher level self-expression.



Maslow believed that education can be considered as a form of self-expression that can be high priority aim, that is to say self-expression is a full realization of talents, abilities and potentials. Every person is talented and unique and so one should create certain situations in the classroom in which students can be opened up , and here are they :



- 1) to create specifically developed exercises performing in which students understand a result of their activity;
- 2) to create an atmosphere of collaboration in the classroom;
- 3) to use audiovisual means in the classroom;
- 4) to work in groups, so that in groups there are students with strong and weak motivation to education;
- 5) to use personal individualization;
- 6) Teacher's nature of pedagogical impacts, especially availability of stimulus and supports;
- 7) To develop systems of classes with the help of IT strengthening motivational side of studying a language .

I would like to note that the increase of motivation goes through :

- 1) Involvement of students into independent work at the classes;
- 2) problem of exercises and situations;
- 3) academic performance rating, skills ;
- 4) the use of cognitive games;
- 5) regional geography material;
- 6) the use of IT devices at the classes;
- 7) students' friendly attitudes.

Well begun is half done – is a good example of what's being said above. It's no secret that much depends on how teacher is going to begin.

Any person, especially a student, experiences a "unsuccess", but if a subject "succeeds", they study it with a great interest. Students want to get something real palpable for the effort that they've made, and to know that they're walking towards their aims to become highly-qualified experts.

## **2. THE USE OF MODERN AND EDUCATIONAL TECHNOLOGIES CONTRIBUTING TO THE INCREASE OF MOTIVATION**

The main tasks of updating modern education system are the tasks of achieving its quality that would correspond to current and progressive needs of state, to society in preparing an expert, a citizen capable of social and professional adaptation and of personal identity. Modern educational reforming represents new requirements to academic staff teaching students in universities, future experts of various professions. A free thinker predicting results of his/her activity and forming educational process, a teacher, is a guarantor of solving assigned tasks. Objective necessity is creation of conditions for teachers' professional skill growth.

Modern ideas of teachers' professional progress for improving students' learning process are:

- 1) New approaches to learning;
- 2) Learning of critical thinking;
- 3) The use of IT and digital systems for improving learning system.

### **2.1 NEW APPROACHES IN LEARNING AND TEACHING**

New approaches in learning and teaching provide an atmosphere of collaboration, dialogical education, self-regulation, pair and group work. And also holding training exercises, introductory games, watching positive cartoons which teacher pursue several task performance that are division into groups and subgroups, to create an atmosphere of collaboration, and to set psychological climate.

Setting psychological climate arises in dialogue between teacher and students. The dialogue contributes to a setup of friendly connection with a

group, identify what the group knows; repeat past work, identify problems and goals related to the theme of class.

For example, in the course of any theme one can use various images, photos, cartoons, movies with the help of which students independently set goals and tasks of classes and repeat vocabulary. A group can be divided into subgroups with the help of various introductory games depending on what target teacher is pursuing. If there is peer teaching in a group, then group is divided into subgroups so that in groups there is a balance of strong and weak students. Such composition of the group is for peer teaching as students with a strong motivation involve students with a weak motivation in educational process.

New approaches in education and teaching also include dialogical education. Characteristic aspect of dialogical education subject at the classes of English language is a common thread. Since it's based on communicative and cognitive directions, on differentiation and integration of training in all aspects and types of speech activity accounting of students' first language, it's implemented in all types of speech activity: listening, speaking, reading, and writing. Every class begins with conversation between a teacher and a student, that is to say class begins with dialogue between teacher and student.

What date is it today? What month is it today? What day of the week is it? What season of the year is it? What season of the year do you like? What's the weather like today? Do you like such weather or not? Such dialogue can always be changed according to a theme of class. It is known that in a dialogue students (and also their teachers) are equal partners. According to the Messer's research, conversation is an integral part of students' learning. According to Messer's, there are three types of conversation: debate conversation, cumulative conversation, research conversation.

One can use debate conversation in studying grammar, vocabulary and its fastening and in working in pairs or in small groups where everyone defends

his/her opinion and thinks they're right. Because of that disagreement is formed and everyone comes to his/her decision, an atmosphere is more competitive than collaborative. One should use debate conversation between student for pinning theme where everyone defends his/her point of view. There is always competition as everyone wants to show and prove that he/she is right.

Cumulative conversation is well traced in checking a students' given task. It's simple to define those who have prepared for class as leaders are already stood out and are those who have done the task as cumulative conversation is used for sharing knowledge, that is to say everyone accepts and agrees with what others say .

Also, working in groups contributes to involvement of students into research conversation. In studying any theme students are given a task to make a cluster or poster. Performing the given task students are comparing notes, and are independently looking for information using IT (mobile phones, laptops, computers), and are discussing and evaluating each other's ideas. Everyone expresses his/her point of view substantiating it. In involving into research conversation students are thinking aloud: hypothesizing and reasoning. When students work in this way substantiation of theirs becomes a clear consequence of a dialogue.

Research conversation allows students to express their understanding of a theme; helps to understand that other people may have different ideas; helps students to argue their ideas; helps teachers to understand at what stage of education a student is . Also in making clusters and posters in addition to the research conversation, self-regulation process is traced in which students develop understanding and control skills, and tracking an experience of learning through metacognition. Skill development of self-regulation and metacognition is the most important indicator of becoming successful students. If a student succeeds, he/she keeps learning with pleasure, tries to keep

succeeding, that is to say he/she becomes motivated to a subject; interest and desire to get more knowledge are increasing.

## **2.2. LEARNING OF CRITICAL THINKING**

«Learning of critical thinking» involves the following stages of work:

I. Challenge interest, logical assumption and everything that we know on the theme.

Updating knowledge, motivation, search of the sprout that we're looking for to connect it with new one.

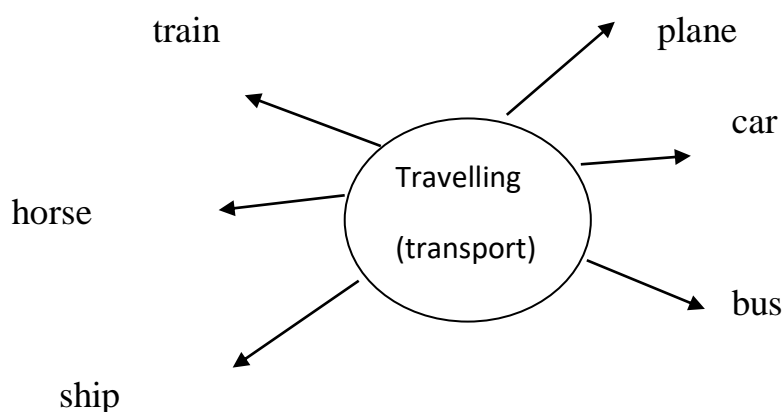
II. Stage of comprehension passes through itself new information. Discussion: everyone should speak out, everyone should be heard. An ability to get one's point across to everyone. An ability to perceive what is unclear. To fixate coincident moments.

III. Reflection is comprehension of what have been learned. New knowledge is built into a common system of knowledge.

The use of three phase (challenge, comprehension and reflection) at the classes, contributes to what the fact that teacher creates such situation (at the stage of challenge) where students themselves name a theme of a lesson and independently set goals and tasks, that is to say it arouses their interest to the theme of the lesson contributing to updating knowledge and increase of motivation. At the stage of comprehension, students work in groups and pairs depending on task. Work in pairs involves making dialogues. Development of critical thinking through a dialogue is research talk, argumentation and dialogue. They contribute to development of a high level of thinking, intellectual development through involvement teachers and students into collaboration of comprehension of sense and knowledge. Working in pairs is a good platform for

further work in the group. There are different ways of dividing into groups depending on a theme of a lesson (seasons of the year, sport, countries, subjects, four walls and etc.). If there is a peer teaching, then one should divide students into groups so that in group there be students with different motivation. That's how zone of proximal development is created, essentially it includes all knowledge and skills that person cannot yet master and demonstrate independently, but is capable of learning under the guidance.

Also, students make clusters. The method "Mind Map"- map of memory, is applied during examination, for example, vocabulary. This method is good at what is given, for example, keyword (theme) and students write all the words related to it. Method «Mind- Map» is good to use in systematization and repeating information, in working with text, in introducing in theme, in collecting language material, in examination.



Method of jigsaw is good to apply during the work with text, dividing students into groups so that in groups there will be students with strong and weak motivation. Everyone receives a part of text, in order to do that duties are distributed, then speaker and time keeper are chosen, the rest of the group are experts. In group students listen to each other, ask questions, make notes, as it is the only way get acquainted with all information. Then speaker does a report. It's good method for peer teaching when duties are not distributed in group and students with strong motivation are trying to help group mates with weak

motivation. Whole group is interested, in order its members to know everything; result of work will affect the summative assessment.

Here, student’s motivation is increased because they don’t want to let the group down.

Method of «Jigsaw» is good to apply in studying grammar, for example, in studying theme of The Past Perfect Tense. Students are offered to fill table with graphs: « Cases of use »/ «Pointers» / « Schemes».

Students are divided into three groups. All groups fill fully the table. In every team there are experts of «cases of use», «pointers», «schemes». They meet, consult, and then bring information to their teams. As a result of interaction, students systematize knowledge of studying theme.

To develop critical thinking is also good to apply Zagashv's I.O. table-synthesis. Table- synthesis is a good technique which was offered by expert of St. Petersburg regional group, by Zagashv I.O. It is recommended for working with text.

Students fill the table:

Keywords	Sentences related with the keywords	Why is this quotation important for me? (thoughts, reasoning)
Sport is good	Sport is good because it makes us strong and fast	I have chosen this sentence because sport plays very important role. If you want to be healthy and strong you must go in for sport.

“Reading with pauses” is used to get students interested, to spark their interest in reasonable reading.

1. Challenge. For example, before reading text students are offered to read the title. Read the title of the text. Can you tell me, what is this text about? Can they read the title of the text and tell what the text is about?

2. Comprehension. Students read the text in paragraphs discussing content of each paragraph and predicting plot development. Ask students questions about the text, but must-have question is “What’s going to be the next and why?”

3. Reflection. At the stage of reflection, students read the full text, comprehending it. Here, one may carry out various work forms: writing, discussion, joint search.

“Bus stop” technique is used in fixating grammar. One should divide group into several groups, hand out papers and write verbs in them, then papers are passed on to each group in turn, and students make sentences with these verbs changing them into verb tenses ( for example, Present Simple or Past Simple). When each group receives their papers back, they check it , correct it and pass it to teacher.

## INSERT

This technique works at the stage of comprehension

I—interactive

N—noting

S—system

E— effective

R—reading and



T —thinking

This is marking the text with icons during the reading.

« V » — already knew

« + » — new

« - » — think differently

« ? » — didn't understand and have some questions

During the reading, students:

- ✓ Make notes;
- ✓ Fill the table in which icons are headline of graphs;
- ✓ Fill the table with information from the text.

Reflection contributes to three important qualities that person should have and that are in-demand in 21 century in order not to feel like an outcast.

**The first one:** self-dependence. It's not a teacher who speaks for student, it is a student who analyzes and realizes what he/she is capable of. Student makes his/her own choice and determines the measure of activity in his activities.

**The second one:** enterprising. Student realizes what he/she can enterprise right now to become better. In case of mistake or failure, student doesn't despair, but assess the situation, and on the assumption of new conditions, sets new goals and tasks and successfully solving them.

**The third one:** competitiveness. He, who can do something better than others, and navigates through any situations more effectively.

It is well-known that any person does gladly what he/she is good at. But any activity begins with overcoming difficulties. Reflective people's ways,

starting from first difficulties and ending with first successes, are much shorter.

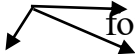
I apply several kinds of reflection at my classes:

- ✓ Reflection of mood and emotional condition;
- ✓ Reflection of learning material content;
- ✓ Reflection of activity.

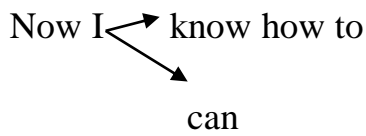
Reflection with the use of two paintings depicting the landscape. One picture is imbued with a melancholy, sad mood, the other with a joyful, cheerful mood. Students choose the picture that matches their mood. The easiest option is to show students cards with the image of three faces: cheerful, neutral and sad. The trainers choose a picture that matches their mood.

In my opinion, the reception with different color images is interesting. Students are given two cards: blue and red. They show the card at the beginning and at the end of the lesson. This method helps to track how the emotional state of the trainer changes in the process of the lesson. Changes in mood during the lesson, valuable information for thinking and adjusting the activities of the teacher. Students are also invited to express their emotional mood in the form of a drawing and, at the end of the lesson, to hold an exhibition of drawings or students draw emoticons.

With the help of reflection of educational material the teacher finds out how the trainers realized the content of the material studied. For example, accepting an unfinished sentence:

During today's lesson I have  found out....  
remembered.... learnt...

Reflection of achieving the goal. The purpose of the lesson is written on the blackboard and at the end of the lesson there is a discussion of its achievement. We have reached the aim of the lesson.



- speaking about.....
- understanding the information.....
- explaining the problem (reason)....
- saying my own opinion on ....
- giving arguments.....
- finding necessary information .....
- Etc.

Reflection of attitude to the problem (topic), a look at the problem earlier and now after studying.

Opinion on the problem now and then

Then (before)	Now
<p>know</p> <p>↖ ↗</p> <p>Didn't understand</p>	<p>Now I.....</p>
<p>realize</p> <p>↖ ↗ ↘</p> <p>Couldn't imagine</p> <p>express</p>	<p>Besides.....</p> <p>Moreover....</p>

With the help of reflection of activities, the student is not only aware of the content of the material, but also comprehends the ways and methods of his work, learn to choose the most rational. What I've done? What is the aim? Why am I doing this? What result did I get? Which option is better? - such questions

are asked by students who own a reflection, that is, who are aware of their activities. For example, “Received the answer (!) Or not (?)”.

Each student gets a sheet, on one side there is a sign (!) where they write to which questions on the topic they received an answer. On the reverse side there is a sign (?), and here the students write what questions they wanted to get an answer, but did not receive. It is necessary to analyze the students' answers in order to use them in setting goals and planning the next lesson.

Critical thinking training is very well applicable in the classes of teaching English at universities.

This method allows the teacher to:

- give students the opportunity to express their views on the topic being studied freely, without fear of being wrong and corrected by teachers;
- record all statements: any of them will be important for further work;
- combine individual, pair and group work: individual allows each student to update their knowledge and experience; group work - to hear other opinions, to present their point of view without the risk of being mistaken.

Due to the method of teaching critical thinking, students have increased the motivation, they have become more bold in expressing their point of view without fear of being mistaken.

### **2.3 THE USE OF INFORMATION AND COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGIES IN TEACHING**

Currently, there is an active process of informatization in the field of education, which involves the intensive introduction and application of new information technologies, the use of all means of communication that can be useful in the formation of an intellectually developed person who is well

oriented in the information space. ICT is becoming the most effective means of expanding the educational area of modern universities.

The rapid introduction of information processes in various areas of life requires the development of a new model of the education system based on modern information technologies. We are talking about creating conditions for the disclosure of the student's creative potential, the development of his abilities, the education of the need for self-improvement and responsibility. Knowledge and qualification become priority values for person.

Accordingly, the education system should be aimed not so much at mastering the amount of ready-made knowledge, but at the formation of intellectual skills, skills of independent cognitive activity. This is a different education system compared to the one that was previously claimed by society. The use of new information technology tools in various spheres of human activity, including in education, is becoming increasingly important. In domestic and foreign publications, the computerization of the educational process is considered as one of the actual factors of the organization of education.

ICT is becoming the most effective means of expanding the educational area of a modern university.

The widespread use of ICT opens up new opportunities for the teacher in teaching English.

Today, the university is completely changed, updated and rebuilt: a different content is proposed, different approaches, different relationships and pedagogical mentality.

The university is actively promoting the new level of informatization of education, the active use of ICT and digital educational resources in the educational process.

The appearance and use of information technology in the educational process contributed to the updating of traditional methods and techniques in the organization of the educational process in a modern university. Both teachers and students got the opportunity of real cooperation, unlimited creativity and a great desire to study any university subject, in this case English. To date, information computer technology has taken a strong place in the learning process.

The use of ICT in English classes is an effective pedagogical means of learning foreign culture and the formation of communication skills. It is known that the use of ICT contributes to:

- acceleration of the learning process;
- increased student interest in the subject;
- improving the quality of learning material;
- allow to individualize the learning process;
- provide an opportunity to avoid subjectivity assessment.

English language classes using ICT are different with:

- ❖ diversity;
- ❖ increased student interest in the English language;
- ❖ effectiveness.

In modern conditions, considering the interest of students in information technology, we need to use this opportunity as a powerful tool for development:

- ❖ motivation at the English lessons;
- ❖ cognitive competency in English classes;
- ❖ improve the quality of education.

The teacher, in modern conditions, should be able to use not only traditional teaching aids, but also information and communication technologies, in

particular, to introduce training and monitoring computer programs, electronic textbooks and Internet resources into the educational process.

The use of computer technology is a requirement of time. Consider using a computer to presentations for English classes at universities. Computer presentations allow you to:

- to focus the attention of students on significant points of the presented information;
- create visual spectacular samples in the form of illustrations, diagrams, diagrams, graphic compositions, etc .;
- affect several types of memory at once: visual, auditory, emotional, and in some cases motor.

One of the most effective presentation software is Microsoft Power Point. It allows you to create your own presentations in a short time.

Colorfully designed presentations solve the problem of using visual material. For example, if before you had to cut and paste pictures onto a board, now with the help of the Internet you can find pictures and drawings and immediately paste them onto a slide. If there are a lot of pictures, arrange a few slides.

Today, new techniques using Microsoft PowerPoint presentations are opposed to traditional teaching of English at universities. This form of organization of classes is the most accessible for teachers to work and apply it in classes.

Microsoft PowerPoint presentations are used to:

- charging a background of speech;
- learning vocabulary;
- learning to read;
- learning dialogic and monologue speech;

- working out grammatical phenomena.

Let's analyze some of them.

### **When learning vocabulary:**

When working with vocabulary, use such types of work as:

1) exercises to fill gaps. In case of an incorrect answer, the following scenarios are possible:

➤ prohibiting the student to proceed to the next task or sentence;

➤ transition of the student to the next task or sentence with their subsequent correction, namely, highlighting the correct answer with a different color or putting a “cross” sign, which means an incorrect answer;

2) exercises in the form of crosswords, where the spelling of the word the wrong letter is highlighted in gray, not black;

3) exercises in the form of a game for the preparation of sentences, during which the learner moves the cursor over the necessary word, which then moves to the sentence being composed and becomes after the last moved word;

4) the student is invited to correlate two lists of foreign words and establish pairs of synonyms or antonyms;

5) the learner is offered a list of foreign words and a list of definitions of these words. A student is required to combine each word with its corresponding definition (picture);

6) the exercise “Find a mistake”, in which it is necessary to correct one or another word in accordance with the given situation.



## Working out grammatical phenomena.

When studying grammar, the most complex and important information is animated. Animation of objects allows the learner to additionally focus on significant components. With further study of this topic, you can repeatedly return to any slide, delving into all the details of the phenomenon being studied. This form of presentation of the material is suitable for everyday work.

Each lesson develops its own grammatical phenomena: affirmative, negative and interrogative sentences, degrees of comparison of adjectives, participle, passive voice, pronouns some, any, structures there is / there are, prepositions, etc. All types of work of one lesson are aimed at working out a certain grammatical phenomenon.

Animation effects, highlighting a grammatical phenomenon with a bright color, inserting a picture that facilitates understanding are used for the explanation.

When learning grammar, visibility allows you to build productive writing skills. Using the animation of objects, select the studied grammatical phenomenon. It is convenient to use texts with gaps when studying individual speech constructions.

Thus, the use of computer presentations in English classes at universities allows you to:

- increase students motivation;
- use a large amount of illustrative material;
- to intensify the lesson, eliminating the time for writing the material on the board;

- to involve trainees in an independent learning process, which is especially important for the development of their general educational skills.

### **Electronic textbook**

Now the use of an electronic textbook is a very productive and relatively accessible method for teaching English. The electronic textbook allows to implement the principles of a differentiated and individual approach to learning. With the help of an electronic textbook, you can most effectively conduct training and verification of such types of speech activity as listening and reading, as well as develop and develop students' grammar, lexical, and sound-pronunciation skills.

An electronic textbook is a computerized, pedagogical software designed primarily for presenting new information that complements the print media, which serves for individual and individualized education and allows to a limited extent to test the knowledge and skills of the student.

There are three main modes of operation of the electronic textbook:

1. Training without verification.
2. Training with testing, in which at the end of each chapter (paragraph) the student is asked to answer several questions to determine the degree of assimilation of the material.
3. Test control designed for the final control of knowledge with the assessment.

Working with an electronic textbook makes it possible not only to read and see texts and images, but also to reproduce sound and music. Multimedia facilitates the process of memorization, allows you to make the lesson more interesting and dynamic, to create the illusion of co-presence, empathy.

### **The use of Internet resources in English classes.**

The possibilities of using Internet resources are huge. The Internet has colossal informational capabilities and equally impressive services.

The global Internet network creates the conditions for obtaining any necessary information for students and teachers: regional geographic material, news from the life of young people, articles from newspapers and magazines, necessary literature, etc. Students can take part in testing, in quizzes, contests, competitions, held on the Internet, etc. It is not surprising that teachers of English have appreciated the potential of the global Internet.

The use of Internet resources in English classes contributes to the intellectual creative development of students.

Today, internet resources allow you to:

- fill the shortage of sources of educational material;
- develop the skills and abilities of information retrieval activities;
- objectively evaluate knowledge and skills in a short time.

The Internet creates unique opportunities for learning English, it creates a natural language environment.

The use of information and communication technologies in teaching and learning at universities makes it possible to control the attention of students through animation effects; increased learning motivation; systematization of the studied material; the formation of computer multimedia competence, both teacher and student.

Thus, the use of educational computer programs in English classes is the main sign of the positive results of creative activity, which entails an increase in students' motivation.

It follows that the use of information technology allows you to carry out your plans, to make the lesson modern. It is important to find the border that will make the lesson truly educational and cognitive. The use of computer technologies in the learning process also influences the growth of a teacher's professional competence, which contributes to a significant improvement in the quality of education, which leads to the solution of the main task of educational policy.

The use of information and communication technologies allows you to:

- provide a positive learning motivation;
- conduct classes at a high aesthetic and emotional level (music, animation);
- provide a high degree of differentiation of learning (almost individualization);
- improve knowledge control;
- rationally organize the learning process, improve the effectiveness of classes;
- provide access to various reference systems, electronic libraries, and other information resources.

In conclusion, we would like to say once again that today's students should be ready to successfully integrate into society. Solving this problem helps the massive introduction of information computer technologies in the educational process, which allows you to solve one of the important tasks of learning - increasing knowledge, increasing quality performance, increasing the strength of knowledge, improving overall efficiency.

### 3. CONCLUSIONS

The result of increasing motivation in learning English through modern technologies at universities is:

- definition of values as important life orientations;
- strengthening the importance of the subject - English;
- orientation of students on the application of their knowledge in solving educational and life tasks;
- creation of conditions for design and research activities;
- focused university training of future specialists.

The introduction has contributed to the development of a wide range of skills among students, which include:

- critical thinking;
- the ability to apply knowledge in creative way;
- research skills;
- skills of using information and communication technologies;
- the ability to work in a group and individually;
- КОММУНИКАТИВНЫЕ НАВЫКИ;
- the ability to solve tasks.

The use of such methods as new approaches in training and teaching, teaching critical thinking, using information and communication technologies in teaching are relevant and meet the needs of both the teacher and students who understand the importance of the importance of working with information on its content. Since rapidly developing technologies contribute to the constant updating of knowledge, students themselves see the need to learn all their life, and for this they need to choose the necessary information for themselves in a huge flow of information, analyze and draw the right conclusions. Moreover, these methods should work not only at universities, but also in the future profession, in society, and to help them be independent, self-motivated,

confident, fluent in Russian and English languages and using advanced digital technologies.

#### **4. PRACTICAL EXERCISES**

### **The Noun**

#### **Exercise 1.**

*Write the plural form of the following.*

*A regular nouns*

story, play, glass, flag, photo, name, match, knife, bush, chief, page, radio, roof, prize, set, key, factory, wolf, piano, class, cup, city

*B irregular nouns*

child, goose, man, foot, mouse, woman, sheep, person, deer, tooth, ox

*C nouns of Greek or Latin origin*

criterion, datum, formula, crisis, stimulus, index, phenomenon, medium, oasis, nucleus, memorandum, basis, radius, analysis, symposium, hypothesis

*D compound nouns*

fellow-worker, merry-go-round, man-of-war, passer-by, sister-in-law, forget-me-not, room-mate, lily-of-the-valley, ticket-holder, commander-in-chief, governor-general

#### **Exercise 2.**

*Divide the following words into two columns: countable and uncountable nouns (you must get 25 uncountable nouns).*

furniture, coffee, leaf, food, computer, list, blood, job, work, language, country, advice, information, money, progress, permit, permission, baggage, luggage, beach, traffic, weather, window, knowledge, air, water, holiday, damage, accommodation, scenery, scene, pigeon, bread, mountain, kick, news, accident, laugh, flour, laughter

#### **Exercise 3.**

*Translate the following sentences into Russian paying attention to the words in bold type.*

1. The windows in his car are made of unbreakable glass. 2. He gave me a glass of water. 3. These are the works of Shakespeare. 4. He is not at home, he is at the works. He is installing new equipment. 5. His work is rather dull, he thinks. 6. Do you have scales? I want to weigh this fish. 7. Celsius or Fahrenheit scales are used in many countries. 8. I spilled the water, give me a cloth, please. 9. Have you bought cloth for draperies? 10. He's got his car insurance policy. 11. She always criticizes the government's policy. 12. I need an iron to press my dress. 13. These items are made of iron. 14. There is neither salt nor pepper on the table. 15. He planted several peppers in the hothouse.

#### Exercise 4.

Match the word on the left with its partner on the right.

Example: a piece      music — a piece of music

1) a lump	a) lightening
2) a bit	b) thunder
3) a flash	c) clothing
4) a stroke	d) air
5) a slice	e) salt
6) a clap	f) bread
7) a sum	g) rain
8) an article	h) milk
9) a loaf	i) soap
10) a bar	j) toothpaste
11) a spot	k) cloth
12) a carton	l) furniture
13) a tube	m) paper
14) a puff	n) cheese
15) an item	o) money
16) a sheet	p) luck
17) a strip	q) ice
18) a grain	r) sugar
19) a block	s) information
20) a breath	t) smoke

#### Exercise 5.

Change the uncountable nouns in bold type into countable ones in the sentences using the words from Exercise 4.

Example: Buy some bread or. your way home. — Buy a loaf of bread on your way home.

1. I had **luck** in the casino yesterday. 2. I saw **lightening** and then heard **thunder** in the west. 3. How much **luggage** have you got with you? 4. Would you like

some more *cake*? 5. Daddy brought me milk *chocolate*! 6, He blew *smoke* out of his pipe into the open window. 7', How much *sugar* do you take with your tea? 8. We need to buy some *furniture* for our kitchen. 9. Give me please brown shoe *polish*. 10, He told us very interesting *information* last night,

**Exercise 6,**

*Write out the nouns which are used only in the plural form (you must get 25 nouns).*

athletics, cattle, scissors, taxes, pyjamas, economics, police, news, means, goods, pants, subjects, billiards, darts, outskirts, premises, mechanics, spectacles, clothes, stairs, maths, shorts, tights, gymnastics, congratulations, crossroads, patience, scales, lodgings, foundations, equipment, research, authorities, soap, contents, looks, countryside, traffic-lights, tongs, toothpaste, headphones, delays, binoculars, electronics, eyes, trousers

**Exercise 7.**

*Complete the following table and give the corresponding singular or plural form of the nouns, if any. If there is no the corresponding form, put a v. The first two words are given as examples.*

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
means	means		
V	scissors		

means, scissors, pence, Frenchman, Roman, photo, physics, cloth, sheep, halves, news, sleeves, mice, species, contents, athletics, series, knowledge, feet, phenomena, clothes, bases, headquarters, Japanese

**Exercise 8.**

*Find the odd word in the chain of the nouns.*

*Example: tea — butter — onions — meat*

- 1) trousers — spectacles — scales — news 2) advice — knowledge — contents — progress
- 3) phonetics - vacation - goods – information 4) criteria — datum — oases — radii 5) mice — men — goats — geese 6) police — work — weather — furniture 7) congress — team — government — equipment 8) water — potato — milk — bread 9) time — business — stone — bird 10) means — species —



crossroads — wolves 11) thanks — barracks — congratulations — authorities  
12) diagnoses — roofs — cattle — accommodation 13) premises — mechanics  
— darts — laughter 14) success — research — applause — path 15) journey —  
voyage — travel — walk

### Exercise 9.

*Open the brackets and choose the proper form.*

1. I feel that the jury already (have/has) thought that you are innocent. 2. The government (was/were) not able to pursue the policy which had been promised before the elections. 3. The police (is/are) investigating the case now. 4. The crew of the plane (consist/consists) of four people. 5. His company (was/were) founded in 1996. 6. The party (was/were) in full swing. The music was playing, the company (was/were) eating and drinking. 7. My family (is/are) early risers, so at 11 o'clock p.m. the family (is/are) always in bed. 8. The cattle (is/are) in the field next to it. 9. The committee (is/are) full of enthusiasm. 10. Such an organization as the board of directors (is/are) elected by stockholders. 11. The ship turned out to be a good ship, the crew (was/were) skilled seamen. 12. The government usually (consist/consists) of the prime minister and several ministers. 13. The average American family (have/has) three children. 14. The jury (is/are) represented by twelve people. 15. The crops (is/are) good this summer,

### Exercise 10.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the verb *to be*

A

1. The crew \_\_\_ rescued by our boat, 2. Her clothes \_\_\_ very fashionable. 3. Your advice \_\_\_. always welcome. 4. The information he gave us \_\_\_ very useful. 5. A little money \_\_\_ better than nothing. 6. That species of spiders \_\_\_ commonly seen in deserts of North Africa. 7. I think her hair \_\_\_ dyed. 8. No news. \_\_\_ good news. 9. I don't want to work here. The equipment \_\_\_ too complicated. 10. There \_\_\_ a lot of sheep in the field. 11. I think this \_\_\_ detailed research. 12. Where \_\_\_ my spectacles? 13. The phenomena \_\_\_ unusual. 14. Mathematics \_\_\_ difficult, but physics \_\_\_ more difficult to my mind. 15. The cattle \_\_\_ up the hill.

1. Look out! The stairs \_\_\_ very old. 2. In my opinion, he looks \_\_\_ very important for an actor. 3. The police \_\_\_ responsible for these actions. 4. Criteria \_\_\_ changing, you know. 5. The committee \_\_\_ set up several months ago. 6. The traffic \_\_\_ very heavy in this street. Be careful at the corner. When the traffic-lights \_\_\_ red, don't cross the street. 7. The working wages \_\_\_ up. 8. The knowledge she has got at college \_\_\_ very deep. 9. The carrots \_\_\_ delicious. 10. The vacation \_\_\_ always fun. 11. The funeral \_\_\_ usually a sad occasion. 12. The evidence \_\_\_ against him. 13. The contents of the letter \_\_\_ made public. 14. The opera-glasses \_\_\_ out of focus. 15. The grapes \_\_\_ ripe.

### Exercise 11.

Match the words on the left (1-10) with the appropriate phrases on the right (a-j) to get 10 sentences.

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| 1) Your advice      | a) are located outside London.                     |
| 2) Our headquarters | b) she lent us was not enough.                     |
| 3) The money        | c) are fit.  |
| 4) The premises     | d) is an important part of the Olympic Games.      |
| 5) The information  | e) are often deceptive.                            |
| 6) Best news        | f) is installed in our new shop.                   |
| 7) New equipment    | g) against applying for that job was good.         |
| 8) Athletics        | h) was not reliable. It was published in tabloids. |
| 9) The scales       | i) is always printed in morning newspapers.        |
| 10) Appearances     | j) where he worked were in the suburbs.            |

### Exercise 12

Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them. Some sentences have more than one mistake.

1. We had such a terrible weather that we left the hotel in the country (we did not have heatings there) and took an accommodation with a fire place in town instead.
2. Yesterday I got a permission to go there. What about you? Have you got your permits?
3. I love French impressionists but I would need an advice from a specialist before I bought any. My knowledges in that area are very poor.
4. Her works are definitely making great progresses these days. She has done a lot of researches lately.
5. Have you heard that Jack's lodging is in London, but in the outskirts of the city? These are interesting news, aren't they?
6. The police is looking for the criminals who escaped last night. The informations about them were sent to all the police stations of the district.
7. Political and economic crises is frequent for Africa.
8. How many luggages are you taking? Oh, I think you won't be able to cope with them. You'll have to hire a porter.
9. Last week was awful for her. She had two tooth pulled out, her childs got ill and finally her husband lost moneys.
10. The tights is too loose for her.

### Exercise 13.

Translate the sentences into English.

1. Его советы всегда бывают такими убедительными (convincing). Почему ты никогда им не следуешь?
2. Какая ненастная (nasty) погода! В такую

дождливую погоду лучше сидеть дома. 3. Она делает хорошие успехи в английском, 4. Я удивлен (be surprised), что она поверила этим странным новостям. Боюсь, они недостоверны. Кто их ей сообщил? 5. Мне кажется, эти весы сломаны. 6. Вчера я положил сюда деньги. Где они? Я не могу их найти. 7. Я считаю, что помещение для нашего магазина вполне подходящее. 8. Мне не нравятся эти джинсы. Мне кажется, та пара джинсов лучше. 9. Экипаж был готов выполнить (fulfil) приказ капитана. 10. Критерии часто меняются, 11. Ваши товары сделаны очень плохо. 12. Нику необходимо сшить (sew) новые брюки. У меня есть хорошая синяя материя. 13. Он купил буханку хлеба, пакет молока, кусок мыла и тюбик зубной пасты. 14. Информация о ценах очень интересна. 15. Здесь нет светофора, и перекресток очень опасное место. 16. Виды этих растений (plant) неизвестны. 17. Вдруг позади себя я услышал громкий смех, 18. Его знания по математике лучше моих, 19. Ты взял бинокль? — Нет, он нам не понадобится. Наши места во втором ряду (row). 20. Улики были важными, и он чувствовал, что суд присяжных был против него. 21. В Англии зарплата рабочим выплачивается каждую неделю. 22. Актеров встретили аплодисментами. 23. Мои часы отстают. 24. Морковь богата витаминами. 25. Она считает, что современная одежда красива и удобна (convenient)

## Noun Structures

### Exercise 14.

*Read and translate the following compound nouns. Find compounds which are countable (8), uncountable (6) and those which are used either in the singular (6) or the plural (6).*

heart attack, greenhouse effect, luxury goods, pedestrian crossing, contact lens, package holiday, food poisoning, mother tongue, birth control, roadworks, human rights, arms race, alarm clock, pocket money, hay fever, blood donor, blood pressure, data processing, generation gap, kitchen scissors, assembly line, sunglasses, labour force, race relations, windscreen wiper, brain drain

**Exercise 15.** Match the words on the left (1-10) with their definitions on the right (a-j).

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| 1) a baby-sitter | a) your first language   |
| 2) a traffic jam | b) money you pay on your salary  |
| 3) a box office  | c) an office where you buy tickets for trains  |
| 4) mother tongue | d) an office where you buy tickets for cinemas   |
| 5) income tax    | e) a person who patrols streets to make sure you are not parked in the wrong place illegally |

- |                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| 6) handcuffs         | f) a knife for opening<br>tins                                       |
| 7) greenhouse effect | g) a person who looks<br>after children when their parents are out   |
| 8) ticket office     | h) a long line of cars<br>which move slowly because the road is busy |
| 9) a traffic warden  | i) it is caused by hair<br>sprays and old fridges                    |
| 10) a tin opener     | j) every policeman has<br>them                                       |

### **Exercise 16.**

*Rewrite the following phrases according to the example.*

*Example: a factory which produces automobiles — an automobile factory a man who drives a bus — a bus driver a machine that washes dishes — a dish washer paper for writing letters — writing paper*

1) a shop that sells books; 2) an editor of a newspaper; 3) a person who pays taxes; 4) a brush for shoes; 5) cake made with raisin; 6) a garage for cars; 7) a company which provides insurance; 8) a bag made of leather; 9) a tool for sharpening pencils; 10) a book which has cheques; 11) a machine for washing clothes; 12) a license to drive a car; 13) a person who dresses and cuts hair; 14) an office that sells tickets; 15) a device for opening tins.

### **Exercise 17.**

*A Make up compound structures according to the example.*

*Example: a child who is five years old — a five year old child*

1) a man whose height is six feet; 2) a walk which covers three miles; 3) a programme which lasts half an hour; 4) a flight which takes two hours and a half; 5) a hotel having four stars; 6) a lorry which can carry 5 tonnes; 7) a field of fifty acres.

*B Paraphrase the sentences according to the example.*

*Example: She's got a flat of two rooms. — She's got a two-room flat.*

*His trip lasted four days. — He had a four-day trip,*

1. He covered a distance of two miles. 2. Her holiday in California lasted 10 days, 3. They decided to take an interval of three hours. 4. She lives in a building that has sixteen storeys. 5. His call to Paris lasted five minutes. 6. While I was on holiday I met two charming girls of twenty years old. 7. He saw a film of two series yesterday. 8. She bought two bags of potatoes that weigh five kilos. 9. He gave us a banknote of fifty dollars to change. 10. I wrote a composition which covered twenty pages.

## **The Possessive Case**

### **Exercise 18.**

*Paraphrase the following using the possessive case.*

*Example: The son of our manager — our manager's son*

A 1) the house of Mr. Smith; 2) a doll of the girls; 3) the works of Rembrandt; 4) a toy of the baby; 5) a meeting of the employees; 6) the bags of those women; 7) the orders of our boss; 8) the books of the children; 9) the cottage of my parents; 10) a garage of her cousin.

B 1) coal deposits of the world; 2) the influence of the sun; 3) the atmosphere of the earth; 4) the joys and grieves of life; 5) the arrival of the ship; 6) icy mountains of Greenland; 7) the policy of the company; 8) gold reserves of Russia; 9) the gravitation of the planet; 10) the decisions of the commission.

C 1) the mother of Kate and Mary; 2) the children of my aunt Ann; 3) the paintings by Picasso and Dali; 4) the gun of the commander-in-chief; 5) the times of Ivan the Terrible; 6) the speech of the Minister of Foreign Trade; 7) the correspondent of *the Herald Tribune*; 8) a flat of my father-in-law; 9) the wives of Henry the Eighth; 10) oil wells of Saudi Arabia.

D 1) a cruise which lasts three weeks; 2) work which takes two hours; 3) a distance of five kilometres; 4) the operation which lasted four hours; 5) the flight which took three hours; 6) a semester of eight weeks; 7) the rest which lasted an hour; 8) a play of three acts; 9) a football match which lasts ninety minutes; 10) a telephone conversation which lasts three minutes.

### **Exercise 19.**

*Paraphrase the following using the possessive case.*

*Example: I must sleep 9 hours a day to feel well. — / must have nine-hours<sup>^</sup> sleep to feel well.*

1. Every day at noon we have a break, which lasts fifteen minutes. 2. I can't understand why he is so tired. The distance he covered is a mile only. 3. The walk to the station was short. It took us ten minutes. 4. Last year we spent two weeks in Greece. The holiday was terrific. 5. If you want to get there, a trip will take you only five hours. 6. Don't take a training course that lasts a week. It won't do you good. 7. I slept only five hours yesterday because my train came late. 8. Yesterday our lesson lasted thirty minutes because our teacher was to leave at 12 o'clock. 9. If you want to have a voyage round Europe, you will need at least three weeks. 10. My workweek lasts five days.

### **Exercise 20.**

*Replace the nouns in the possessive case by the prepositional groups where possible.*

*Example: He always takes his brothers' books. — He always takes books of his brothers.*

1. The only thing she wanted was to see her parents' house again. 2. No one could explain the young girl's behaviour at yesterday's supper. 3. Last Sunday's rugby match was disappointing. Our team lost. 4. The boy was looking through a children's magazine. 5. After an hour's break we resumed our work. 6. At that time he lived in a little flat for economy's sake. 7. It was four and a half hours' ride. 8. I don't like cow's milk. 9. He was puzzled by Ann and Peter's visit. 10.

When Friday came, he was at his wit's ends. 11. She dropped in at the chemist's to buy some aspirin. 12. This is John's coat, and that is Peter's.

### Exercise 21.

*Translate into English using noun structures.*

1. Президент прибыл в страну с трехдневным визитом (2 варианта). 2. Мне нужно купить туфли. Ты не знаешь, где здесь обувной отдел (department)? 3. Никто не знал, что сказать, и наступило минутное молчание. 4. Когда утром он спустился в столовую, на столе лежали остатки (remains) вчерашнего ужина. 5. Доклад главнокомандующего был краток. 6. Мне кажется, что проблема «отцов и детей» — вечная (eternal) проблема. 7. Эта дорога закрыта. Ведутся дорожные работы. 8. «Утечка мозгов» — острая (acute) проблема развивающихся (developing) стран. 9. Ты считаешь, что в Китае необходимо ввести (implement) регулирование рождаемости? 10. Приезд Поля и Кет был неожиданностью (surprise) для тети Эня. 11. Самые богатые залежи (deposits) нефти находятся в Арабских Эмиратах. 12. Проблемы, с которыми человечество (mankind) столкнулось (face) в конце двадцатого века, — это загрязнение (pollution) воздуха и воды, а также «парниковый эффект». 13. После двухчасовой прогулки все захотели есть (2 варианта). 14. Портрет жены Рембрандта — одна из самых известных картин художника. 15. Этому замку триста лет.

### Test1

Choose the right variant.

1. His advice \_\_\_ always reasonable. I advise you to follow \_\_\_.

- a) are, them                      c) is, it  
b) are, it                          d) is, them

2. The applause \_\_\_ deafening. I can't stand \_\_\_ any longer. Let's go out.

- a) are, them                      c) is, them  
b) is, it                              d) are, it

3. The second witness's evidence \_\_\_ more convincing. \_\_\_ made me believe that the suspect is innocent.

- a) are, it                          c) are, they  
b) is, it                              d) is, they

4. Look, her clothes \_\_\_ brand new. Where did she get the money to buy \_\_\_?

- a) is, it                              c) are, them  
b) are, it                              d) is, them

5. The Browns who lived in \_\_\_ house \_\_\_ dining with the Harrisons who \_\_\_ their best friends.

- a) a three-storey, were, were                      c) a three-storey's, were, were  
b) three-storeys, were, was                      d) three-storeys', was, were

6. The information he gave us \_\_\_ convincing. I don't think we should check \_\_\_.

- a) is, it                              c) are, them  
b) is, them                          d) are.it

7. Her pyjamas\_\_\_made of silk. I like\_\_\_very much.  
 a) is, it                                   c) are.it  
 b) is, them                               d) are, them
8. These scissors\_\_\_dull! I can't cut anything with  
 a) are, them                               c) is, it  
 b) is, them                               d) are, it
9. When I move to London, I'll have to find lodgings. I'm afraid\_\_\_will be very expensive and I'll have to pay for\_\_\_half of my salary,  
 a) it, it                                   c) they, it  
 b) they, them                           d) it, them
10. I think billiards\_\_\_a dull game. I wonder why the youth nowadays\_\_\_so fond of\_\_\_?  
 a) are, is, it                           c) are, are, them  
 b) is, are, it                           d) is, are, them
11. He is so depressed. The contents of the letter\_\_\_ made public. General public\_\_\_discussing\_\_\_.  
 a) have been, is, them               c) have been, are, them  
 b) has been, are, it                   d) has been, is, it
12. Look! Goods\_\_\_displayed in the window. The manager says that there will be\_\_\_sale.  
 a) are, two-days'  
 b) is, two-day's                       c) are, a two-days  
 d) is, a two-day
13. Our family \_\_\_ good at playing draughts. Draughts\_\_\_our favourite game. We play\_\_\_every weekend.  
 a) is, is, it                               c) are, are, them  
 b) are, is, it                           d) is, are, it
14. Stop! The traffic\_\_\_heavy and the traffic lights \_\_\_red. In\_\_\_time you will cross the street.  
 a) is, is, two-minutes               c) are, is, a two-minutes'  
 b) are, are, a two-minute           d) is, are, two-minutes'
15. He spent\_\_\_holiday at the\_\_\_,  
 a) a week, Richardsons'  
 b) week's, Richardson               c) a weeks, Richardsons  
 d) week, Richardson's
16. She was going for\_\_\_walk across the fields to the\_\_\_house. She was sure that he would help her because it was the duty of\_\_\_to help poor people like her.  
 a) a ten-miles, governor's-general, governor-generals  
 b) a ten-mile's, governor-general's, governors-general  
 c) a ten-mile, governor-general's, governor-generals  
 d) ten miles', governor-generals', governors-general
17. She wished she had a little garden with\_\_\_and like that of\_\_\_.  
 a) lilies-of-the-valleys, forgets-me-nots, Mrs. Sand  
 b) lily-of-the-valleys, forget-me-nots, Mrs. Sand's  
 c) lilies-of-the-valley, forget-me-nots, Mrs. Sand's  
 d) lilies-of-the-valleys, forgets-me-not, Mrs. Sand

18. Take your\_\_\_and get out with\_\_\_! You got my \_\_\_ notice, didn't you?  
a) belonging, it, two weeks                      c) belongings, them, two week's  
b) belongings, it, a two weeks                      d) belonging, them, two week's
19. We want to equip our factory with\_\_\_and to install\_\_\_ in the assembly shop.  
a) new machineries, them                      c) new machines, it  
b) a new machinery, it                      d) new machinery, it
20. Have you got all the\_\_\_of Byron in your home library? — Yes, I have, but I haven't read all of\_\_\_.  
a) works, them                      c) works, it  
b) work, it                      d) work, them

## Quantifiers

### Exercise 22.

*Paraphrase the following words in bold type using little, a little, few, a few.*

*Example: There is **hardly any** wine in the bottle. — There is little wine in the bottle.*

*The chairman said some words. — The chairman said a few words.*

1. I can't help you. I have hardly any time. 2. Mr. Brown, can I come and see you today? I'd like to ask you some questions. 3. It is no use asking him about it. He has hardly any knowledge of the subject. 4. I go to the theatre when I have some money and free time. 5. Is there much chalk in the box? — No, there is hardly any here. 6. He drank some water and felt much better. 7. There was hardly any tea in the cup, so he poured some more. 8. Hardly any people understood what he said. 9. There are some carrots in the box. 10. Mummy, may I have some ice cream? 11. Many years ago some people realized the significance of this discovery. 12. There was hardly any doubt that the problem could be solved in the near future. 13. We didn't have to take a porter. We had hardly any luggage. 14. I think he is rather greedy. He buys hardly any things for himself. 15. We have received some valuable information. I think it will help us a lot.

### Exercise 23.

*Fill in the blanks with little, a little, few, a few.*

1. I'd like to make\_\_\_remarks in connection with the topic under discussion. 2. \_\_\_people realize how important it is to go in for sports. 3. This student has deep knowledge in English and besides he knows\_\_\_ French. 4. He is a man of\_\_\_words. 5. Only\_\_\_names remained in his memory, for this accident happened more than 20 years ago, 6. That lecture was so difficult that only\_\_\_students could understand it. 7. I had \_\_\_ hope of getting home tonight because I realized that I had lost my way. 8. The postman doesn't often come here. We receive\_\_\_letters. 9. I'm having\_\_\_trouble fixing this shelf. — Oh dear! Can I help you? 10. I shall be away for\_\_\_days from tomorrow. 11. When you've wanted something very badly and it comes at last, it is somehow \_\_\_ frightening. 12. It was a cold windy evening, and there were\_\_\_people in the park. 13. There were no doctors for the wounded, and to



make things worse there was only \_\_\_ food left. 14. She asked permission to speak to the guest for \_\_\_ moments, 15. I won't listen to you! I'd like to believe that there is \_\_\_ hope left.

### **Exercise 24.**

*Paraphrase the following sentences using the words from the box.*

*Few, a few, quite a few, little, a little*

1. Only some pupils wrote the test. 2. A small number of people live to be 80 in Russia. 3. I have not much time for studying. 4. He had a considerable number of mistakes in his dictation. 5. She has got some time to prepare for the report.

### **Exercise 25.**

*Translate into English using little, a little, few, a few.*

1. Джим вчера попросил меня починить (repair) машину, но у меня было мало времени, и мне пришлось отказать ему. 2. Она очень застенчива (shy). У нее мало друзей. 3. В зале было довольно много людей, так как фильм был интересный, 4. У меня есть несколько книг по этой проблеме. 5. У нас нет сахара. Купи немного по дороге домой. 6. Мало кто понял, что он хочет сказать. 7. Я выпил немного кофе и смог работать до полуночи. 8. В его переводе было мало ошибок, 9. Они подошли к небольшой деревне; в ней было несколько домов. 10. У них оставалось немного времени до начала спектакля, и они решили пойти перекусить (have a bite), 11. Не думаю, что он будет хорошим врачом. У него мало терпения (patience). 12. У нас было мало денег, поэтому мы решили поехать автобусом, 13. Довольно много друзей пришли навестить его. 14. У него не хватает несколько долларов, чтобы купить эту картину. 15. Ты можешь взять несколько конфет.

### **Exercise 26.**

*Fill in the blanks with how much or how many,*

1. \_\_\_ sugar have you put into my cup? 2. \_\_\_ spoons of sugar do you usually take with your tea? 3. \_\_\_ homework do you get every day? 4. \_\_\_ cups of coffee do you drink a day? 5. \_\_\_ coffee did you drink yesterday? 6. \_\_\_ foreign languages do you speak? 7. Do you know \_\_\_ money he spent? 8. Tell me please \_\_\_ time it will take me to get there. 9. \_\_\_ times a month do you go to the theatre? 10. Do you know \_\_\_ people live in Moscow? 11. I see you are a stranger here. Let me help you. The customs officer is asking \_\_\_ perfume you have got. 12. \_\_\_ cigarettes do you smoke a day? 13. \_\_\_ oil has been extracted this month? 14. \_\_\_ barrels of oil did the Arab Emirates sell last year? 15. \_\_\_ money does it cost to get there?

### **Exercise 27.**

*Fill in the blanks with much, many, a lot of.*

1. There are a few bananas and \_\_\_ apples in the fridge. 2. She put \_\_\_ butter in the cake. 3. Have you got \_\_\_ homework? — Our teacher always gives us \_\_\_ homework. 4. We don't need \_\_\_ eggs to cook this meal. 5. He's made \_\_\_ progress in such a short time! 6. Are

there \_\_\_ unemployed people in your country? 7. There are \_\_\_ oil deposits in Siberia. 8. There is \_\_\_ time at our disposal. 9. She is very sociable, that's why she has got \_\_\_ friends. 10. Try to call Mr. Green. He never gives \_\_\_ useful advice, but you can hear \_\_\_ valuable information. 11. One needs \_\_\_ money to start a new business. 12. You can't install \_\_\_ equipment in a small shop. 13. He doesn't want \_\_\_ advisors. He thinks he can solve the problem himself. 14. Be careful with him. He's got \_\_\_ projects and desires, but hasn't got \_\_\_ money and patience to realize them. 15. Astronomy studies \_\_\_ interesting phenomena.

### **Exercise 28.**

*Replace a lot (lots) of or plenty of by a great number of, a great deal of or a great amount of.*

*Example: There are plenty of goods in the shop. — There are a great number of goods in the shop.*

1. Bill Gates earns a lot of money every day. 2. He changed lots of jobs in his life. 3. Ask him to tell you something. He had a lot of interesting experiences during his travelling. 4. She has got a lot of trouble with her new work. 5. The boss gave me plenty of instructions before his leave. 6. She is trying to keep to a diet. Every day she eats lots of apples and drinks plenty of mineral water. 7. Our department receives a lot of mail. 8. We have to pay a lot of taxes buying luxury goods. 9. They bought plenty of paint to redecorate their house. 10. The US automobile industry produces plenty of cars every year. 11. Bell invented the telephone, one of the most useful devices. Since his invention lots of telephones have been installed in people's apartments. 12. A lot of snow covers the Himalayas. 13. Plenty of time was wasted on investigating the robbery. 14. A lot of people object to advertising goods during a film show. 15. Plenty of tea is cultivated in India and Sri Lanka.

### **Exercise 29.**

*Fill in the spaces with much, many, few, a few, little, a little, a lot of, plenty of, a great number of, a great amount of, a great deal of (you may get several variants).*

1. The living conditions in the district were very poor and there were only \_\_\_, \_\_\_ doctors available. 2. He is a very intelligent man. Do you know that he speaks \_\_\_ foreign languages? 3. The situation was becoming worse and worse. \_\_\_ projects had to be postponed. 4. The show was poor. There was \_\_\_ applause. 5. There were \_\_\_ people at the meeting, but most of them left early so there aren't \_\_\_ left now. 6. Have you finished that glass of milk? There is \_\_\_ milk in the fridge if you'd like more. 7. We haven't had \_\_\_ rain this summer. The garden needs watering. 8. The party was a failure. Unfortunately, they invited \_\_\_ interesting people. 9. He didn't know \_\_\_ facts about the accident. 10. Did the storm make \_\_\_ damage to the crops? 11. Is there \_\_\_ coal left in the region? 12. Don't worry. There is \_\_\_ food. It will be enough for a month's expedition. 13. He doesn't pay \_\_\_ attention to

pronunciation. It's difficult to understand him. 14. Is there \_\_\_work for you to do every day? 15. There is\_\_\_ whisky left. Help yourself.

### **Exercise 30.**

*Choose the right variant.*

1. Oh, there are four of them! I can give them (so/ only) a few sandwiches. 2. I've met (quite/too) a few decent people in my life. 3. She respected him but gave him (too/only) a little thought. 4. I think there is (so/quite) a lot of charm in him. 5. (Too/Only) many cooks spoil the broth. 6. Unfortunately, we make (very/only) many mistakes in our life. 7. (Quite/Very) few words were said to understand the problem. 8. (Too/Very) much sand covers most of the territory of Egypt. 9. There are (only/ so) many policemen in the streets during national holidays. 10. There are (very/only) many tales about Loch Ness monster. 11. Let's go to the canteen. There are (quite/very) a few coins in my wallet to buy a sandwich. 12. There were (too/quite) a few people in the shop. 13. (Quite/too) a lot of money is spent on armament. 14. We've got (too/only) a few minutes before the ship sails. Let's say good-bye to each other. 15. There were (quite/only) many delicious dishes on the table in front of him.

### **Exercise 31.**

*Translate from Russian into English.*

1. Он написал довольно много книг. 2. Я не могу идти с вами сегодня в театр. У меня так много работы. 3. В нашей библиотеке мало английских книг. 4. В автобусе было слишком много народа. 5. В стакане было мало воды, и он налил (pour) себе немного. 6. Мало кто понимает его английский язык. У него слишком много ошибок. 7. В прошлом году было построено мало новых домов. 8. Премьер-министр (prime minister) сказал журналистам лишь несколько слов. 9. Я встречал мало хороших врачей в своей жизни. Но доктор Грин, наш врач, дает нам массу полезных советов. 10. Можно мне немного кофе? — Нет, он слишком крепкий для тебя. 11. Мне кажется, что ты положила слишком много соли в суп. 12. Чтобы построить больницу, необходима крупная сумма денег. 13. Он купил довольно много акций (share). 14. Многие люди не употребляют сахар и соль. 15. Он понял лишь несколько слов.

## **The Article**

### **Exercise 32.**

*Fill in the blanks with the appropriate article where necessary.*

1. I saw \_\_\_ man in \_\_\_ armchair at \_\_\_ window. He was reading \_\_\_ newspaper. 2. \_\_\_ boy said that he wanted two candies. 3. Is there anybody else in \_\_\_ waiting-room? — Yes, \_\_\_ man wants to speak to you. 4. Where is \_\_\_ brief-case? I put it on \_\_\_ table. 5. Is there \_\_\_ enquiry office at this airport? 6. Could you open \_\_\_ door, please? I see \_\_\_ girl knocking. 7. Let's make \_\_\_ speech at \_\_\_ reception. 8. \_\_\_ advice you gave me helped \_\_\_ lot. 9. I like to be in \_\_\_ centre of everything. 10. At \_\_\_ night I had \_\_\_ terrible headache after I had drunk \_\_\_ lot of \_\_\_ wine in \_\_\_ evening. 11. Look out! There is \_\_\_ dangerous bend

in the road. 12. Mrs. Patsy is \_\_\_last person I'd like to meet. 13. Tom's planning to take\_\_\_ boat to go fishing on \_\_\_Sunday. 14. Could you phone later, please? Kate's having\_\_\_bath. 15. The rent is 150 dollars\_\_\_month. 16. We often go to\_\_\_theatre and to\_\_\_cinema, but very rarely to\_\_\_circus. 17. When\_\_\_ father came home, they had\_\_\_dinner and then watched\_\_\_TV. They went to\_\_\_bed at 11 p.m. 18. What\_\_\_pity they haven't seen this performance! 19. She can't find\_\_\_ telegram which she received this morning. 20. Are you going to\_\_\_country for\_\_\_weekend? 21. She usually goes shopping on\_\_\_Thursdays, but\_\_\_last Thursday she didn't do shopping. She had to go to\_\_\_dentist's. 22. What\_\_\_lovely song! What\_\_\_beautiful music! 23. Could you tell me\_\_\_time, please? - It's\_\_\_quarter past six. 24. Do you usually go by\_\_\_train or in\_\_\_car there?

### **Exercise 33.**

*Fill in the blanks with the appropriate article where necessary.*

*A Geographical names.*

1. They travelled by car around \_\_\_Europe last month. 2. \_\_\_Great American Lakes are\_\_\_Lake Huron, \_\_\_Lake Superior,\_\_\_Lake Ontario,\_\_\_Lake Michigan and\_\_\_Lake Erie. 3. \_\_\_north of\_\_\_Scotland is known for its wild beauty. 4. Are\_\_\_Urals higher or lower than\_\_\_Alps? 5. It was Burns who wrote "My heart's in \_\_\_Highlands". 6. \_\_\_Mediterranean Sea washes\_\_\_Europe,\_\_\_Asia and\_\_\_northern coast of\_\_\_Africa. 7. What oceans does\_\_\_Panama Canal connect? — I suppose\_\_\_Atlantic and\_\_\_Pacific Oceans. 8. \_\_\_Seine flows through\_\_\_Paris to\_\_\_Atlantic Ocean. 9. We get coffee mostly from \_\_\_Brazil and \_\_\_Columbia. 10. \_\_\_Alaska is the biggest and coldest state in\_\_\_USA. 11. Where are\_\_\_Canaries situated? 12. \_\_\_United Kingdom consists of four parts:\_\_\_England, \_\_\_Scotland, Wales and\_\_\_Northern Ireland, or \_\_\_Ulster. 13. \_\_\_Himalayas are the highest mountains in\_\_\_Asia. 14. I went to\_\_\_German Republic last summer, but I haven't been to\_\_\_Netherlands yet. Of course, I would like to see\_\_\_Hague. 15. \_\_\_Thames is not the longest river in\_\_\_Great Britain but it is rather wide and navigable. 16. \_\_\_America consists of two parts, \_\_\_South and North America, doesn't it? 17. In\_\_\_north there are\_\_\_Cheviots. These are the mountains which separate\_\_\_England from\_\_\_Scotland. 18. \_\_\_Brazil is the largest country of\_\_\_South America. \_\_\_Amazon, the widest river in\_\_\_world, flows there. 19. What city is the capital of\_\_\_Philippines? 20. \_\_\_Republic of China is the third largest country in\_\_\_world after Russia and\_\_\_Canada.

*B Abstract nouns and names of materials.*

1. \_\_\_life is impossible without\_\_\_water and\_\_\_air. 2. You can't swim in the river,\_\_\_water isn't warm enough. 3. She hurried in and found\_\_\_coffee almost boiled away. 4. \_\_\_oil is lighter than\_\_\_water. 5. He has\_\_\_deep knowledge in mathematics. 6. You can't do any work without \_\_\_knowledge. 7. \_\_\_life is .\_\_\_complicated matter. 8. \_\_\_Browns lived\_\_\_quiet life somewhere in South Carolina, 9. The Moslems don't eat \_\_\_pork, 10. \_\_\_water is precious in deserts and can be found in oases. 11. This is\_\_\_coffee I am so fond of. I don't think

there is \_\_\_ better coffee than this. 12, \_\_\_ coffee is cultivated in the south of the island. 13. It seems to me Englishmen show \_\_\_ deep distrust of strangers. 14. He wanted to give his son \_\_\_ good education. 15. \_\_\_ air was fresh and cool. 16. Nothing can travel faster than \_\_\_ light. 17. He can give you \_\_\_ good piece of \_\_\_ advice. He is fond of giving \_\_\_ advice. — But \_\_\_ advice he gave us did not help. 18. The patient was making \_\_\_ noticeable progress, 19, You can be satisfied with \_\_\_ progress you have made. 20. Our plane ran into \_\_\_ heavy weather.

*C School, college, etc.*

1. He had a headache and didn't go to \_\_\_ work yesterday. 2. "What did you get in \_\_\_, literature?" the mother asked her daughter when she came \_\_\_ home from \_\_\_ school. 3. It was twelve o'clock but Andrew was still in \_\_\_ bed. 4, Could you give me a lift to \_\_\_ college? 5. In summer they seldom go to \_\_\_ college. 6. I like to stay at \_\_\_ home on cold evenings. 7. Have you heard anything from John lately? — Yes, he graduated from \_\_\_ Cambridge University. 8. The queen is going to open \_\_\_ new hospital in the capital next week. 9. Mom came to \_\_\_ school to see my teacher yesterday. 10. "You must do this exercise at \_\_\_ school and that one at \_\_\_ home," said our teacher in a loud voice. 11. I left my bag in \_\_\_ hospital when I was visiting Judy. 12. What a strange building! — It's \_\_\_ prison. It was built in the last century. 13. When I came to \_\_\_ prison to see my cousin, I found out that he had escaped two days before. 14. Look at this man. Can you imagine that he was in \_\_\_ prison five years ago? 15. Let's meet at \_\_\_ church. It's on the left of \_\_\_ university. 16. I went to \_\_\_ church last Sunday but I couldn't pray. There were two many people in \_\_\_ church. 17. The doctor hoped that the patient would not stay in \_\_\_ bed for a long time. 18. Look at this ring. What a fine piece of \_\_\_ work! 19. They called a plumber to \_\_\_ prison to repair bad taps. 20. The parents were waiting for their children outside \_\_\_ school. 21. Oh, what \_\_\_ beautiful church! Let's go there to make some photos.

*D Proper names.*

1. \_\_\_ Mall is a wide avenue leading from \_\_\_ Trafalgar Square to \_\_\_ Buckingham Palace, the residence of the English kings. 2. The centre of \_\_\_ City is represented by three buildings: \_\_\_ Mansion House, \_\_\_ Royal Exchange and \_\_\_ Bank of \_\_\_ England. 3. When will he arrive at \_\_\_ Heathrow airport? 4. \_\_\_ Bolshoi Theatre is famous for its ballet performances. 5. What is on at \_\_\_ "Pushkinsky"? 6. \_\_\_ Princess Diana stayed at \_\_\_ Hilton Hotel. 7. People coming to London often do shopping in \_\_\_ Oxford Street. 8. \_\_\_ London Zoo is situated in \_\_\_. Regent Park in London. 9. If you are interested in churches and historical places, you should by no means see \_\_\_ Westminster Abbey, \_\_\_ Houses of Parliament, \_\_\_ St. Paul's Cathedral and \_\_\_ Tower. 10. \_\_\_ British Museum is famous for its library, one of the richest in the world. 11. The English parks — \_\_\_ Hyde Park, \_\_\_ Kensington Gardens and \_\_\_ Kew Gardens where you forget that you are in the big city, struck me most of all. 12. Julius Caesar founded \_\_\_ Tower of London. 13. Across the road from Westminster Abbey is \_\_\_ Westminster Palace, the seat of \_\_\_ British Parliament. 14. My train leaves

from \_\_\_ Waterloo Station at 2.10 a.m. 15. \_\_\_ West End is the symbol of a wealthy and luxurious life. 16. If you like art galleries you should go to \_\_\_ National Gallery and \_\_\_ Tate. 17. Where do you live? — I live in \_\_\_ High Street. 18. On \_\_\_ Wednesday \_\_\_ *Financial Times* published an article about the situation in \_\_\_ North Korea. 19. Are you going to stay at \_\_\_ St. Marcus Hotel? — No, at \_\_\_ Plaza Hotel. 20. If you want to do shopping, go to \_\_\_ Oxford Street or \_\_\_ Bond Street.

*E Nouns denoting parts of the day and names of seasons.*

1. It was \_\_\_ evening. 2. It was \_\_\_ warm summer evening. 3. \_\_\_ evening was very pleasant. 4. Let's meet in \_\_\_ evening, I'll be very busy in \_\_\_ afternoon. 5. It was \_\_\_ early morning. 6. It snowed at \_\_\_ night. 7. We started early in \_\_\_ morning. 8. We were shivering though it was \_\_\_ warm night. 9. They got up at \_\_\_ dawn. The sun was shining brightly, there were no clouds in the sky. But they started off late in \_\_\_ morning. 10. What do you usually do in \_\_\_ autumn? 11. Russians like \_\_\_ hard winter with plenty of \_\_\_ snow and \_\_\_ frost. 12. Nature is so beautiful in \_\_\_ spring. 13. In this country \_\_\_ spring is rather wet, \_\_\_ summer is sometimes hot, \_\_\_ autumn is windy and muddy, \_\_\_ winter is seldom cold and snowy. How can people live here? I prefer \_\_\_ summer all the year round. 14. She still remembers \_\_\_ autumn when he first told her of his love. 15. Nothing can be more beautiful than green forests in \_\_\_ early spring. 16. It was \_\_\_ late autumn. 17. \_\_\_ autumn of 1996 was very warm and sunny. 18. \_\_\_ spring and love make people feel young. 19. I am going to France in \_\_\_ summer. 20. In Great Britain \_\_\_ winters are not severely cold, while \_\_\_ summers are rarely hot.

### **Exercise 34.**

*Fill in the blanks with the appropriate article where necessary.*

1. \_\_\_ pine grows in many parts of the world. 2. \_\_\_ life would be more difficult without \_\_\_ telephone. 3. \_\_\_ whale is in \_\_\_ danger of becoming extinct. 4. He prefers \_\_\_ town to \_\_\_ country. 5. Can you play \_\_\_ violin? 6. Will you play \_\_\_ draughts with me? 7. \_\_\_ tulips and daffodils are my favourite spring flowers. 8. \_\_\_ Chinese invented \_\_\_ paper and \_\_\_ powder. 9. \_\_\_ gulden is the currency of \_\_\_ Dutch. 10. \_\_\_ man and \_\_\_ woman were created equal. 11. The government should take more care of \_\_\_ disabled and \_\_\_ unemployed. 12. Yesterday we went to the Zoo. We saw \_\_\_ small bear there. He was like \_\_\_ Teddy bear. 13. Does \_\_\_ polar bear live in \_\_\_ Arctic or in \_\_\_ Antarctic? 14. He brought her \_\_\_ black rose. \_\_\_ black rose is \_\_\_ very rare species. 15. \_\_\_ bicycle is one of the main transport means in \_\_\_ Amsterdam. 16. Was it difficult for you to communicate in \_\_\_, Switzerland? — No, fortunately I met \_\_\_ Swiss who spoke \_\_\_ English very well. He helped us a lot. 17. When did \_\_\_ man first go into \_\_\_ space? 18. \_\_\_ daffodil is the national emblem of \_\_\_ Welsh.

### **Exercise 35 (Revision.)**

*Fill in the blanks with the appropriate article where necessary.*

1. He lives in\_\_south of\_\_Australia. 2. In his novels Jack London, \_\_\_ famous American writer, described\_\_life of\_\_poor. 3. It seemed to him that nothing would break such\_\_peaceful silence. Suddenly there was\_\_scream, then\_\_second and\_\_third. 4. Can you play\_\_guitar? 5. He came in one morning when we were having\_\_dinner on\_\_terrace of\_\_ hotel and introduced himself. 6.\_\_world tour costs \_\_\_lot of money. 7. Did he fail you? What\_\_surprise! 8.I don't believe you. I think you're telling \_\_\_lie. 9. Did you have\_\_lovely time in\_\_ Hague? 10. It was \_\_\_ early evening but I was feeling sleepy so I decided to have\_\_nap. 11. He made\_\_gross mistake.\_\_economists can't make such\_\_mistakes. 12. Have\_\_ look at the sky. It looks like\_\_rain, 13. She'll have\_\_ swim and return in\_\_quarter of\_\_hour. 14. I'll have to convince him that I'm telling\_\_truth. 15. He wasn't used to driving on\_\_left. 16.\_\_Christmas Eve is on \_\_\_ 24th of December, 17, Don't worry, we'll get\_\_home before\_\_sunset. 18, I'd like to have\_\_ sandwich with\_\_sausage for\_\_breakfast, 19. My favourite subject at\_\_school was\_\_biology. 20. He knows\_\_ history of\_\_French Revolution well. 21. To tell\_\_ truth, I didn't expect to find\_\_ homeless man here. 22. It's\_\_ high time you stopped being so selfish. 23.\_\_earth goes round \_\_\_sun. 24.\_\_Lombard Street in\_\_City of London is\_\_centre of\_\_banking in Great Britain. 25,\_\_Queen Elizabeth\_\_II won't speak on\_\_radio tomorrow, 26.\_\_English Channel is between\_\_Great Britain and\_\_France. 27.\_\_ Trafalgar Square is \_\_\_ geographical centre of \_\_\_ London. 28. When\_\_student, Jane spent two years in \_\_\_Europe. 29.\_\_Pacific is\_\_ largest ocean on our planet. 30. Have you ever been to\_\_Museum of\_\_ Fine Arts? 31. Show me\_\_Bermudas on this map, please. 32.\_\_Mississippi is\_\_longest river in \_\_\_USA. 33. One of my classmates entered \_\_\_ Moscow State University last year. As for me, I chose\_\_Higher School of\_\_Economics. 34 \_\_\_Urals are old and not very high. 35. We are just taking\_\_first steps into\_\_ space.\_\_universe is still *terra incognita* for us. 36.\_\_. Russians have \_\_\_ wonderful folk song tradition. 37. Why don't you eat with\_\_knife and \_\_\_fork? 38. They've been waiting to hear from him all\_\_month. 39. We met on\_\_wet Monday in\_\_June. 40. Look out!\_\_cat is on\_\_TV! 41.\_\_Queen Elizabeth had \_\_\_dinner with\_\_ President Clinton. 42. lie was elected \_\_\_President in 1996. 43. Mr. Smith, ,,\_\_engineer of Black &Co.,returned from his trip to\_\_\_Malta. 44. He sat to his letter to\_\_\_ *Sun*, 45. Mary was talking with \_\_\_Dodges who were sitting near the fire-place. 46.I saw\_\_beautiful Goya in Milan once. 47, He looked at me from\_\_head to\_\_toe. 48.I fought for.\_\_freedom, for the brotherhood of\_\_man, 49. He is\_\_very sociable man. He always has many invitations to\_\_ dinner, 50. On\_\_one hand,\_\_facts he presented are true, buton\_\_other hand, I can't trust them. I know he often tells\_\_lies. 51. He fell in love with her at\_\_ first sight. 52. Don't take my words close to\_\_heart. 53.\_\_ Moscow of 1950's is not\_\_Moscow of\_\_1990's.

**Exercise 36.** *Translate into English.*

1. Будьте добры, передайте мне соль, пожалуйста. 2. Вечер был влажный (damp) и прохладный. 3. Был холодный и ветреный (windy) день. 4. Вино слишком сладкое. 5. Я люблю сухое вино. 6. Она нашла такую хорошую работу. 7. Погода плохая. Ночь была очень холодная. Я не хочу гулять в такую холодную погоду. 8. Человек приручил (domesticate) собаку много лет назад. 9. Это неожиданная новость. 10. Он обладает обширными знаниями в области медицины. 11. Кипр к Мальта известные туристические центры. 12. Она прожила трудную жизнь. 13. Нефть используют для производства (production) бензина. 14. Шотландия \_\_ гористая (mountainous) часть Великобритании. Самая высокая гора — пик Бен-Невис. 15. Где они остановились? — В отеле «Континенталь». Это на Хай-стрит.

## Test 2

*Choose the right variant.*

1. He crossed \_\_ stream which was below the pool stepping cautiously from \_\_ stone to \_\_ stone.

- a) the, \_\_, \_\_
- b) the, the, the
- c) a, a, a
- d) the, a, a

2. In \_\_ spring of \_\_ following year we went \_\_ abroad and were absent several months.

- a) \_\_, the, \_\_
- b) the, the, the
- c) \_\_, \_\_, \_\_
- d) the, the \_\_

3. \_\_ day after my talk with Isabel I left \_\_ Chicago for \_\_ San Francisco where I was to take ship for \_\_ Far East.

- a) a, \_\_, \_\_, \_\_
- b) the, \_\_, \_\_, the
- c) \_\_, \_\_, the, the
- d) the, the, the, the

4. After \_\_ lunch they sat down under the oak tree drinking \_\_ Turkish coffee.

- a) the, the
- b) \_\_, \_\_
- c) \_\_, the
- d) a, a

5. I had scarcely got into \_\_ bed when a strain of \_\_ music seemed to break forth in \_\_ air just below my window.

- a) \_\_, \_\_, \_\_
- b) a, \_\_, the
- c) the, the, \_\_
- d) the, \_\_, the



6. But after \_\_\_ fortnight of \_\_\_ bad weather it cleared. "Let's see how \_\_\_ weather turns out?" he said and took a chair nearer at \_\_\_ hand.

a) \_\_\_, a, \_\_\_, the

b) a, the, the, a

c) a, \_\_\_, the, \_\_\_

d) the, the, the, the

7. At \_\_\_ tea, which they both took with \_\_\_ lemon, John spoke about \_\_\_ Bahamas.

a) \_\_\_, the, the

b) \_\_\_, \_\_\_, \_\_\_,

e) \_\_\_, \_\_\_, the

d) the, the, the

8. \_\_\_ map of \_\_\_ world, until \_\_\_ end of \_\_\_ fifteenth century exhibited only \_\_\_ one hemisphere, and even that was not completely explored.

a) the, the, the, the, the

b) the, \_\_\_, \_\_\_, the, \_\_\_

c) a, the, \_\_\_, \_\_\_s \_\_\_

d) the, the, the, the, \_\_\_

9. As \_\_\_ weather was fine, they had \_\_\_ pleasant walk across \_\_\_ park which stretched along \_\_\_ Thames.

a) the, the, the, the

b) \_\_\_, the, a, the

c) the, \_\_\_, the, \_\_\_

d) the, a, the, the

10. On \_\_\_ first of \_\_\_ May, after their last year together at \_\_\_ college, Frank and Robert were on \_\_\_ tram.

a) the, the, \_\_\_, \_\_\_

b) \_\_\_, \_\_\_, \_\_\_, the

c) the, \_\_\_, \_\_\_, a

d) the, \_\_\_, the, a

11. At that time of \_\_\_ year the wild animals — \_\_\_ lion, \_\_\_ gazelle and \_\_\_ antelope also wander further to \_\_\_ south.

a) the, the, the, the, the

b) \_\_\_, a, a, a, the

c) a, the, the, the, \_\_\_

d) the, \_\_\_, \_\_\_, \_\_\_, the

12. After \_\_\_ tea Edgar and the brothers received \_\_\_ permission to leave \_\_\_ table.

a) the, a, the

b) \_\_\_, the, \_\_\_

c) \_\_\_, \_\_\_, the

d) \_\_\_, \_\_\_, \_\_\_

13. "I am in \_\_\_ hurry. Turn to \_\_\_ left in \_\_\_ High Street and drive me down to \_\_\_ East End," I ordered taking my seat.

a) a, the, the, the

b) a, the, \_\_\_\_, the

c) \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_

d) the, a, the, an

14. Through an open window a peak of \_\_ Balkans, wonderfully white and beautiful in \_\_ starlit snow seems quite close at \_\_ hand.

a) the, the, the

b) the, the, \_\_\_\_

c) \_\_\_\_, a, a

d) the, a, a

15. \_\_ great Sahara, that frightful desert of \_\_ vast scorching sand, stretching from \_\_ Red Sea to \_\_ Atlantic, is cleft by one solitary thread of \_\_ water.

a) the, \_\_\_\_, the, *the*, \_\_\_\_

b) \_\_\_\_, a, the, the, the

c) the, the, the, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_

d) \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, the, the

16. It was \_\_ late evening, and after \_\_ lamp-heated air of \_\_ dining-room, \_\_ coolness of \_\_ night was delicious.

a) a, a, the, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_

b) the, the, the, the, the

c) \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, a, \_\_\_\_, a

d) \_\_\_\_, the, the, the, the

17. He walked into \_\_ Green Park that he might cross to \_\_ Victoria Station and take \_\_ underground into \_\_ City.

a) the, \_\_\_\_, the, the

b) the, the, the, the, the

c) \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_

d) \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, an, \_\_\_\_

18. \_\_ rice, \_\_ jute, \_\_ indigo, \_\_ opium oilseeds, and \_\_ tea are \_\_ principle articles which come into export trade from \_\_ Calcutta.

a) \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ the, \_\_\_\_

b) the, the, the, the, the, the, \_\_\_\_

c) \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, the, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, the

d) the, the, the, \_\_\_\_, the, ----, ----

19. They reached \_\_ outskirts of \_\_ forest, and saw \_\_ lights of \_\_ village in which they dwelled.

a) \_\_\_\_, a, \_\_\_\_, a,

b) the, the, the, the

c) \_\_\_\_, the, the, the

d) the, the, the, a

20. " \_\_ telephone may quicken some of \_\_ labours, but it hardly lightens them, since by its power to interrupt it usually wastes quite as much time as it otherwise saves," he said with \_\_ laughter.

a) a, the, the

- b) the, \_\_\_\_, a
- c) \_\_\_\_, the, \_\_\_\_
- d) the, the, \_\_\_\_

21. He came into \_\_\_\_ lounge. \_\_\_\_ woman with \_\_\_\_ dark hair and \_\_\_\_ thin straight face was arranging some flowers in the hall.

- a) the, a, \_\_\_\_, a
- b) a, a, the, the
- c) \_\_\_\_, the, the, the
- d) the, a, the, a

22. What \_\_\_\_ wonderful frame it is! Is it made of \_\_\_\_ birch? \_\_\_\_ birch is my favourite tree.

- a) \_\_\_\_, the, the
- b) a, the, a
- c) a, \_\_\_\_, the
- d) \_\_\_\_, a, a

23. They went \_\_\_\_ side by \_\_\_\_ side, \_\_\_\_ hand in \_\_\_\_ hand silently towards the hedge, where \_\_\_\_ mayflowers, both pink and white, were in \_\_\_\_ full blossom.

- a) \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, the, the, \_\_\_\_, a
- b) the, the \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_
- c) a, a, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, the, the
- d) \_\_\_\_t\_\_\_\_t\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_t\_\_\_\_} \_\_\_\_

24. There are several ways of capturing \_\_\_\_ tigers. But \_\_\_\_ hunters must be very careful because \_\_\_\_ tiger is \_\_\_\_ ferocious beast.

- a) \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, the, a
- b) the, \_\_\_\_, a, a
- c) \_\_\_\_, the, a, the
- d) \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, the, the

25. During \_\_\_\_ last ten years she has been \_\_\_\_ head mistress of \_\_\_\_ elementary school.

- a) the, \_\_\_\_, an
- b) \_\_\_\_.the \_\_\_\_
- c) \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_
- d) the, the, the

## The Pronoun

### Exercise 37.

*Choose the correct form of pronouns in brackets.*

1. What colour is the shirt? It is so far that I can't see (it's/its/it) colour. 2. They rarely drive to (their/them/ theirs) office. They live near (it's/it/its). 3. Look at (me/ mine/my) new watch. Do you like (it/them/its)? 4. These books are (her/hers). Give (them/their/theirs) to (hers/ her). 5. Do you like (you/your/yours) new car? — Oh, (it's/it/its) has never let me down yet. 6. (Theirs/Their/ Them) work is much more difficult than (you/yours/ your) or (me/mine/my). 7. Why are (you/your/yours) sitting here? It is not (you/your/yours) desk, it is (me/ mine/my). 8. This tape recorder of

(her/hers/she) is always out of order. — But so is (you/your/yours)! 9. She has not read a line of (you/your/yours), how can she criticize (you/your/yours) books? 10. The clock has stopped. Something may be wrong with (it's/it/its) spring. 11. (We/Our/Ours) was the last turn. 12. (Their/Theirs/ Them) knowledge of French is not much more superior to (we/our/ours). 13. He is a friend of (us/our/ours). (He/ His/Him) house is opposite (us/our/ours). 14. If these gloves are neither (she/her/hers) nor (you/your/yours), then they should be (me/my/mine). 15. He can live without (me/my/mine) help but not without (them/their/theirs).

### **Exercise 38.**

*Translate the sentences into English.*

1. Кто там? — Откройте, это я. 2. Мой дом на правой стороне улицы, а их — на левой. 3. Их лодка была быстрее нашей. 4. Как зовут вашу собаку? — Ее зовут Квин. 5. В этом районе построена новая дорога. Ее длина более трехсот километров, 6. Это ваша ручка, а это его, но где же моя? 7. Она взяла мои ключи вместо своих. 8. Самый лучший план — ваш. 9. Чью работу будут проверять (check up) — Джона и Кэт? 10. Его автомобиль небольшой, но мотор (engine) у него мощный.

### **Exercise 39.**

*Fill in the blanks with the appropriate reflexive pronouns and translate the sentences into Russian,*

1. I opened the door and found \_\_\_ facing a stranger. 2. Go and see it for \_\_\_ if you like. 3. The newcomers built the houses \_\_\_, 4. Would you mind keeping your words to \_\_\_? 5. He has injured \_\_\_\_\_. 6. During the breaks they amused \_\_\_\_\_ in the bar. 7. We protect \_\_\_ from the cold with warm things. 8. She settled \_\_\_ in the armchair as comfortably as she could. 9. You can trust him. He is honest \_\_\_. 10. He cut \_\_\_ shaving this morning. 11. She burnt \_\_\_ ironing a dress. 12. Don't blame \_\_\_. It is not your fault. 13. Did you cut your hair \_\_\_ or did you go to the hairdresser's? 14. Aren't you hungry? Help \_\_\_ to the meat. It's delicious. 15. How did you enjoy \_\_\_? 16. We must discuss everything to find the way out. Pull \_\_\_ together. 17. She dried \_\_\_, with a blue towel. 18. He felt \_\_\_ getting angry. 19. They had to excuse \_\_\_ for their strange behaviour. 20. I want to insure \_\_\_ against any losses.

### **Exercise 40.**

*Fill in the blanks with the appropriate reflexive pronouns where necessary.*

1. Have a good time. Try to relax \_\_\_ and enjoy \_\_\_. 2. She decided to excuse \_\_\_ his bad behavior. 3. Why don't you want to concentrate \_\_\_? Pull \_\_\_ together and start work. 4. She did not know where to hide \_\_\_. 5. Though it was rather cold in the room he felt \_\_\_, hot. 6. Have you shaved \_\_\_ today? 7. She found \_\_\_ in an awkward situation. 8. Did the children behave \_\_\_? 9. We protected \_\_\_ against damage. 10. She stopped crying, washed \_\_\_, and decided to go downstairs.

### Exercise 41.

*Replace the words in bold type by expressions with reflexive pronouns.*

1. I saw it **with my own** eyes. 2. You needn't come in **person**. 3. He left us **alone**. 4. She lives **on her** own. 5. Did you study English **without a teacher**? 6. The girl **apologized for her behaviour**. 7. We were quite **alone** in the room. 8. **Take** the cake, please. 9. They divided the work between **each other**. 10. It is your **own fault**.

### Exercise 42.

*Translate the sentences into English using reflexive pronouns where necessary.*

1. Я сам узнаю, лучше ли он себя чувствует. 2. Мы не ожидали, что он сам сделает работу так хорошо. 3. Мы провели выходные за городом и получили большое удовольствие, собирая грибы (mushrooms). 4. Вы должны взять себя в руки. Посмотрите на себя в зеркало. Побрейтесь, примите холодный душ, разотритесь полотенцем (towel) и поешьте, наконец. 5. Наконец мы очутились в городе и решили немного расслабиться. 6. Не ходи сегодня в школу, если ты плохо себя чувствуешь. 7. Посмотрите, сколько вкусных вещей на столе! Угощайтесь. 8. Может быть, она объяснит все сама. 9. Почему ты прятешься? 10. «Ведите себя как следует!» — строго (strict) сказал учитель.

### Exercise 43.

*Fill in the blanks with some, any, no.*

1. Unfortunately, they have got \_\_\_ money, 2. She wanted \_\_\_ stamps, but there were not \_\_\_ in the machine. 3. Is there \_\_\_ salt on the table? — No, there isn't. 4. I'd like to buy \_\_\_ new clothes, but I haven't \_\_\_ money, 5. When would you like to come? — \_\_\_ day would suit me. 6. *If you had* \_\_\_ sense you wouldn't have left your car unlocked. 7. She did not answer all the letters because she had \_\_\_ time. 8. Do you have \_\_\_ small change? — Hardly \_\_\_. 9. He returned home without \_\_\_ money. 10. Could you help me? I have \_\_\_ problems with my research.

### Exercise 44.

*Make sentences interrogative and negative.*

1. He lives somewhere near here. 2. Something fell on the floor in the kitchen. 3. Somebody from the Department of Education is here. 4. There is something in what he says. 5. They knew something about it. 6. There is someone in the room. 7. I want to tell you something. 8. Someone is knocking at the door. 9. I saw this man somewhere. 10. Something has happened to her.

### Exercise 45.

*Choose the appropriate pronoun.*

1. She was said that (someone/anybody) was waiting for her in the street. 2. He was standing by the window and was looking (nobody/somewhere) on the right. 3. I don't remember (someone/anyone) else, 4. Have you read (something/anything) by Oscar Wilde? 5. Could you give me (something/anything) to eat? 6. If (someone/anyone) comes, let me know immediately. 7. I haven't heard from her for a month. I am afraid,

(nothing/something) has happened to her. 8. Have you read (something/anything) about this author? — No, I've read (something/nothing). 9. She refused to say (something/anything) because she thought she was being treated unfairly. 10. What's the matter? Why are you crying? Has (anything/something) happened to your mother? She told me she'd had a heart attack yesterday. 11. Would you like (something/ anything) to drink? Whisky or gin? 12. She is still (nowhere/somewhere) abroad. 13. I have (anything/ nothing) to add. 14. The sick man was able to get up without (someone's/anyone's) help. 15. (Anybody/ Nobody) could do this work. It's very simple.

#### **Exercise 45.**

*Fill in the blanks with some, any, no making the appropriate compounds if necessary.*

1. Is there \_\_\_ here who speaks English? 2. Do you have \_\_\_ idea where I can borrow \_\_\_ money here? 3. \_\_\_ tells me you have got bad news for me. 4. He had \_\_\_ idea what to do next. 5. I am sorry, but the practical experience shows that his work is of \_\_, value. 6. Our professor wanted to make up \_\_\_\_\_ exercises to teach the pupils how to use a dictionary. 7. I am sorry but there is \_\_\_ message for you, 8. Hardly \_\_ understood what he meant. 9. We didn't think he'd succeed, but he managed \_\_. 10. I can't find my glasses \_\_\_\_. 11. If there is \_\_\_ message for me, please send it to me. 12. I don't know \_\_\_ about it. He said \_\_\_ about it in his last letter. 13. He is Mr. Know-All. He can give you \_\_\_ information you need, 14. Where can I find \_\_\_ here who can give me \_\_\_ advice on this question? 15. I don't like that every evening you go \_\_\_.

#### **Exercise 47.**

*Fill in the blanks with the appropriate pronoun.*

1. Why are \_\_\_ of you talking? Hardly \_\_\_ is listening to me. 2. No, I have \_\_\_ to add. 3. Has \_\_\_ asked you about this matter? 4. \_\_\_ of them have been there either. 5. You'd better not speak to \_\_\_ of them, 6. Can \_\_\_ of you go there? 7. I am sure they kept silence. \_\_\_ of them spoke about this. 8. I did not know that \_\_\_ of you had already seen it, 9. Write to us \_\_\_ interesting, will you? 10. Could \_\_\_ of you answer such a difficult question?

#### **Exercise 48,**

*Translate into English.*

А 1. Я не читал никаких книг этого писателя. 2. Если что-нибудь случится, это не моя вина (fault). 3. Вы можете купить этот журнал для меня? Я нигде его не вижу. 4. Кто-нибудь еще пришел? 5. Преступник (criminal) нигде не сможет скрыться (disappear), ничто и никто не поможет ему. 6. Купи что-нибудь поесть, у нас в холодильнике (fridge) ничего нет. 7. Почему ты так рассердился? Никто не знал о его приезде. 8. Этот человек никогда ничего не боится. 9. Я нашел чью-то шапку. 10. Мне кажется, с ней что-то случилось. 11. Любой может купить эти куртки (jacket). Они довольно дешевые. 12. Не молчи (keep silent), скажи что-нибудь.

В 1. Кто-то оставил окно открытым» 2. Мне кто-нибудь звонил? 3. Вы что-нибудь читали об экономике (economy) этой страны? — Почти ничего. 4. Я

никому из них не говорил о его предложении (offer). 5. Хотите что-нибудь выпить? 6. Он почти никого не знал в этом городе. 7. Вас кто-нибудь из них приглашал на этот вечер? 8. Ты бы хотел поехать куда-нибудь летом? 9. Кто-то из нас должен пойти дуда. 10. Полицейский показал мне несколько фотографий, но я никого не узнал. 11. Он ничего не сообщил об этом. 12. Если кто-нибудь позвонит, я буду дома в 8 часов. 13. Мы отказались что-либо делать. 14. Он сделал это без какого-либо разрешения. 15. Тебе что-то попало в глаз?

### Exercise 49.

*Fill in the blanks with any, every or corresponding compound pronouns.*

1. It was a small village where \_\_\_ could tell you \_\_\_ about \_\_\_. 2. He goes there \_\_\_ day. You can find him at \_\_\_ time between ten and twelve. 3. She told you \_\_\_ she could. There is hardly \_\_\_ to add. 4. With your complexion you can buy a blouse of \_\_\_ colour. 5. \_\_\_ is here. You can ask \_\_\_. 6. Has \_\_\_ forgotten to sign his name in the list? 7. \_\_\_ who has lost his credit card must declare about it immediately. 8. There was a dead silence. \_\_\_ was listening to the speaker. 9. You needn't explain \_\_\_ else. \_\_\_ understood \_\_\_. 10. \_\_\_ knows what to do.

### Exercise 50.

*Choose the appropriate word out of those given in brackets.*

*A each/every*

1. \_\_\_ child wants to visit Disneyland. 2. \_\_\_. witness was questioned in turn. 3. They \_\_\_ have a comfortable flat. 4. You can come here \_\_\_, day. 5. \_\_\_ of us would be happy to help you. 6. \_\_\_ patient wants to be healthy, 7. Planes fly to St. Petersburg \_\_\_ hour. 8. The performance was a success. \_\_\_ place was taken. 9. This book is divided into 20 units and \_\_\_ of them has a different title. 10. \_\_\_ passenger must fasten the belt when the plane takes off or lands.

*B either/any/neither/none*

1. There are many good inns in Scotland. While travelling, you may stay in \_\_\_ of them. 2. I saw two plays in this theatre, but \_\_\_ of them impressed me. Rita says she saw several plays there, but she liked \_\_\_ of them. 3. John and Pete did not pass an exam yesterday because \_\_\_ was ready for it. 4. The Finns' sisters are arriving tomorrow. \_\_\_ of the two girls is very pretty, but \_\_\_ of them is married yet. 5. There are a few cafes in this district, but \_\_\_ of them is good. 6. What would you prefer, tea or coffee? — \_\_\_ will do. 7. The woman carried a bag in \_\_\_ hand. 8. There were four applicants but \_\_\_ of them impressed me. 9. There is a village on bank of the river 10. Can he speak French or German? — \_\_\_. He is not good at languages.

### Exercise 51.

*Fill in the blanks with the forms is or are.*

1. Neither he nor she \_\_\_ there. 2. Neither they nor she \_\_\_ there. 3. Neither he nor they \_\_\_ there. 4. Both Alice and Kate \_\_\_ in time. 5. Either you or she \_\_\_ right.

6. Both the old and the young \_\_\_ having a good time at the party. 7. Either Jack or Jane \_\_\_ going on business to London. 8. Neither Pete nor his parents \_\_\_ aware of the coming danger. 9. Neither he nor his relatives \_\_\_ present at the wedding. 10. Either he or they \_\_\_ going to do it. 11. Both Mom and Dad \_\_\_ at home. 12. Neither Nick nor Mary \_\_\_ in class today. 13. Both \_\_\_ present, but neither \_\_\_ helpful.

### Exercise 52.

*Choose the correct variant.*

- Please give me \_\_\_ copy of the magazine.  
a) other b) another c) the other d) others
- I see only five boys here. Where are \_\_\_ ones?  
a) another b) others c) the others d) the other
- There were seven people on the beach; two of them were bathing, \_\_\_ were playing volleyball.  
a) the others b) another c) others d) other
- I can give you only a small dictionary, I have got no  
a) the other b) another c) other d) the others
- Two of their guests left rather early, \_\_\_ stayed till midnight.  
a) the other b) another c) the others d) other
- Well, kid, \_\_\_ fifty yards and you will be at home.  
a) another b) other c) the other d) others
- There have been two oranges on the table. One is here, and where is \_\_\_?  
a) another b) the other c) others d) other
- I'm going to stay here for \_\_\_ few days.  
a) the other b) others c) the others d) another
- I think you should choose \_\_\_ colour. This one is too dark.  
a) other b) another c) the other d) others
- Why is he so selfish? He never thinks about \_\_\_\_.  
a) other b) the other c) others d) the others

### Exercise 53.

*Choose the right variant.*

- There/It comes a time when you start to remember your youth. 2. I suppose there/it will snow tomorrow. 3. Look, there/it is snow on the ground. 4. There/It remains nothing to be done. 5. He is right, there/it no doubt about it. 6. Is there/it anything the matter? 7. There/It is windy outside. 8. There/It is a strong wind today. 9. Once upon a time there/it lived a princess. 10. There/It is light in the room. Turn on the light, please. 11. The traffic is heavy in this street. There/It is a lot of noise. 12. There/It is very noisy in this street because there/it is heavy traffic. 13. They are happy, there/it goes without saying. 14. There/ It follows that there/it is no solution to the problem. 15. There/It is a light in the distance.

### Exercise 54.

*Translate the following sentences into English.*

- Если кто-нибудь из вас хочет задать вопрос, поднимите (raise) руку. 2. Оба были готовы помочь ей, но ни один не знал, как это сделать. 3. Если



ты пройдешь (take) еще несколько глагол, ты увидишь море. 4. Каждая девочка хочет быть красивой. 5. Все были рады видеть ее. 6. По обе стороны реки был лес. 7. Каждый из нас может совершить такую ошибку. 8. У меня две сумки: одна черная, а другая коричневая. 9. Ни Тома, ни его родителей нет дома. 10. Врач осмотрел (examine) каждого пациента по очереди.

## The Adjective / The Adverb

### Exercise 55.

*Put the following into the correct order.*

1) suede / Italian / new / red / soft / shoes 2) elderly / tall / Englishman 3) oval / Venetian / ancient / valuable / glass 4) shiny / large / expensive / brown / leather / case 5) square / wooden / old / nice / table 6) modern / stone / large / beautiful / cottage 7) porcelain / tea / blue / thin / old / cup 8) young / blonde / handsome / tall / man 9) old / several / English / beautiful / castles  
10) pretty / French / young / a lot of / girls 11) dark blue / best / silk / my / shirt 12) young / many / factory / German / workers

### Exercise 56.

*Choose the right word.*

1. I don't like horror films. I think they are (frightening/frightened) and (boring/bored). 2. Don't look so (surprising/surprised). Of course, it was a (surprising/surprised) decision but we had no other out. 3. It was a (tiring/tired) journey. I wish I hadn't it. I feel completely (exhausting/exhausted) after 4. The football match was (disappointing/disappointed). Our team lost the game and we left the stadium quite (disappointing/disappointed). 5. He can't remember his pupils' names. It seemed funny at first, but now it is rather (embarrassing/embarrassed). 6. So far as Mrs. Brown was concerned she did not seem to be in the least (embarrassing/embarrassed). 7. He did not come and she looked rather (worrying/worried). 8. The rise in crime is (depressing/depressed). 9. The pictures made a (depressing/depressed) impression on him. 10. She is not (satisfying/satisfied) with her position.

### Exercise 57.

*Complete the sentences with the words from the box using the proper degree.*

*Busy few famous convenient well-read kind-hearted straight hot*

1. She is easy to deal with. I think she is \_\_\_ than her sister. 2. I suppose the works of this artist are \_\_\_ abroad than in his country. 3. This armchair is \_\_\_ of all. 4. He knows a lot. He is \_\_\_ than his schoolmates. 5. Let's take this path. It's \_\_\_. 6. The street you live in is \_\_\_ than mine. 7. Days are getting \_\_\_ in July. 8. He made \_\_\_ mistakes in his class.

### Exercise 58.

*Match the adjectives on the left with their definitions on the right.*

- |            |  |
|------------|--|
| 1) further | a) after some time                                       |
| 2) farther | b) the second of two things or persons already mentioned |
| 3) last    | c) the smallest  |
| 4) latter  | d) coming immediately after, in space or in order        |
| 5) elder   | e) additional  |
| 6) nearer  | f) at a greater distance                                 |
| 7) next    | g) least good  |
| 8) least   | h) coming after all others in time or order              |

- 9) later                                    i) senior of members of  
the family  
10) worst                                    j) closer

### Exercise 59.

*Open the brackets and use the comparative form of the adjectives and adverbs.*

1. This exercise is (simple) than that one. 2. Why are you talking? Please be (quiet). 3. New districts of Moscow are (beautiful) than the old ones. 4. He is (clever) than his brother. 5. My (old) sister is 4 years (old) than me. 6. There are (many) customers on Saturdays than on weekdays. 7. Are expensive things (good) than cheap ones? 8. Is English grammar (difficult) than Russian grammar? 9. He has made (few) mistakes than yesterday. 10. She had to give us (far) information though she didn't want to. 11. Students from Group 3 are (industrious) than those from Group 1. 12. *Нал с you met our new colleagues, Mr Brown, and Mr. Green? The former is an excellent economist, (late) is a good lawyer.* 13. They have got down to business without any (far) delay. 14. This matter is (urgent) than that one. 15. He plays tennis (bad) than she. 16. He's got a still (old) edition of this book. 17. Is there a (late) train passing here? 18. (far) details will be given tomorrow. 19. Sparrows are (сопшюъ) than any other birds. 20. Motor-cycles are (noisy) than cars, aren't they?

### Exercise 60. Choose the right variant.

1. Martin was the (more talented/most talented) of the two brothers. 2. Of the three shirts I like the blue one (better/best). 3. My dog is the (prettier/prettiest) of the two. 4. This summary is the (better/best) of the two presented. 5. There are nine planets in our solar system and Pluto is the (farther/farthest). 6. Mary is the (tallest/ taller) of the two girls. 7. The boss likes my plan (better/ best) of the two. 8. This is the (less difficult/least difficult) of the four cases. 9. This knife is the (sharpest/ sharper) of the two. 10. Mother was the (more/most) beautiful of seven daughters.

### Exercise 61.

*Translate into English.*

1. Кто из этих двух лучший ученик? 2. Она примерила (try on) свои два платья и надела самое нарядное (smart). 3. Он осмотрел все компьютеры и купил самый современный (modern). 4. Кто самый высокий ученик в классе? 5. Из двух игрушек мальчик выбрал самую яркую.

### Exercise 62.

*Make up sentences according to the example.*

*Example: life/beeoming/hard — Life is becoming harder and harder.*

*life/becoming/difficult — Life is becoming more and more difficult.*

1) people/living/long 2) going abroad/becoming/popular 3) crime/becoming/common  
4) the light in the rooms/becoming/dim 5) computers/becoming/expensive 6)  
factories/employing/few/workers 7) his heart/beating/hard 8) Moscow/becoming/beautiful 9)  
his voice/becoming/weak 10) nights- in winter/becoming/long

### Exercise 63.

*Give the superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.*

1. The Pan-American Highway is (long) road in the world. 2. The Beatles were (successful) pop group. 3. Japan has (crowded) railways in the world. 4. This is our (old) national airline. 5. The Chrysler Building was once (tall) in the world. 6. Is English (useful) language to learn? 7. This is one of (expensive) stores in the city. 8. The Queen must be (rich) woman in the world. 9. Unfortunately, I haven't heard (late) news. I think it was very interesting. 10. Is the Mona Lisa (valuable) painting in the world? 11. His house is (far) in the street. 12. February is (snowy) and (cold) month of the year here. 13. (dangerous) spider is the black widow, whose

bite can kill a man in a few minutes. 14. The world's (expensive) perfume costs \$550 per bottle. 15. (deep) part of the Pacific Ocean is 11 kilometres below the sea-level. 16. I wonder what his (near) step is going to be. 17. Who are (old) members of the club? 18. It was (late) thing I expected of him. 19. The diamond is (hard) mineral in the world. 20. His house is (far) in our street.

#### **Exercise 64.**

*Translate into English using the proper degrees of the words in bold type.*

1. Возьмите этот чемодан (suitcase), он легче вашего. 2. В районе West End находятся **самые дорогие** магазины. 3. Что ты собираешься делать дальше? 4. Я думаю, что **он старше** вас, **помоложе** меня. 5. Это **самый талантливый** студент в нашей группе. 6. Хотя у нас были **самые плохие** места, нам очень понравился спектакль (performance). 7. Где **ближайшее** почтовое отделение? 8. **Последний** поезд прибывал в полночь. 9. **Последние** известия были совсем неинтересные. 10. Они **получили дополнительные** сведения по этому вопросу,

#### **Exercise 65.**

*Put the adverbs in the right place.*

Example: These books are old (very). — *These books are very old.*

1. I hate travelling by air (really). 2. She trusted him (entirely). 3. I understand your situation (fully). 4. It is not his fault. He did not want it to happen (at all). 5. The rain spoiled my day (completely). 6. We did the job quickly (fairly). 7. Though he tried to persuade her, she believed his story (hard, half). 8. He believes that he is right (firmly). 9. The prices are cheap at the hotel (reasonably). 10. I was tired to eat (too, even).

#### **Exercise 66.**

*For each situation put in very, quite or a bit. (Sometimes you may have two variants.)*

Example: Buses run every half an hour there. -

*Buses run \_\_\_ frequently. — Buses run quite/very frequently.*

1. I couldn't sleep. There was \_\_\_ a lot of noise from the disco. 2. There was heavy traffic on the road. The road was \_\_\_ busy. 3. It was only a minute or two after the scheduled time when the train came. The train was \_\_\_ late. 4. Someone paid a great deal of money for the house. The house was \_\_\_ expensive. 5. There were one or two small traces of mud on the boots. The boots were \_\_\_ dirty. 6. We had reasonable weather. It wasn't \_\_\_ marvellous, but it didn't rain. The weather was \_\_\_ good. 7. That music is \_\_\_ too loud. 8. I \_\_\_ like my new job. It's very interesting and better paid than the previous one. 9. They have \_\_\_ a lot of business with our company

III Belgium. 10. She was not \_\_\_ satisfied with her new We. There was something \_\_\_ disappointing but she could not understand what.

#### **Exercise 67.**

*Fill in the blanks with so or such.*

1. The weather was \_\_\_ nasty that she decided to stay at home. 2. He drove at \_\_\_ a high speed that I got frightened. 3. The show was \_\_\_ amusing that we couldn't help laughing. 4. He was \_\_\_ shocked that he couldn't say a word. 5. There were \_\_\_ few participants present that the meeting was cancelled. 6. The girl looked \_\_\_ sick that the mother called the doctor in. 7. The programme was \_\_\_ entertaining that nobody wanted to miss it. 8. They made \_\_\_ brilliant reports that the audience burst out applauding. 9. There were \_\_\_ many interesting books that he did not

know which to choose. 10. I have been studying for \_\_\_ a long time that I have got a headache now.

#### **Exercise 68.**

*Complete the following sentences with the adverbs in the comparative and superlative forms. (You can use the word only once).*

*Carefully easily frequently high late long loud smartly near quickly fast well*

*Example: I was afraid to go \_\_\_ than halfway up the tower. — / was afraid to go higher than halfway up the tower.*

1. I could have found the place \_\_\_ if I had had a map. 2. We were tired and we all envied Mary, for she lived \_\_\_. 3. I like this picture \_\_\_ of all. 4. Why are you wearing these old jeans? You might have dressed \_\_\_. 5. You needn't go away yet. You can stay a bit \_\_\_. 6. To get to London by nine, we can't leave \_\_\_ than seven. It takes two hours. 7. There are a lot of robberies in our city. They happen \_\_\_ nowadays than before. 8. Do it again \_\_\_ and you won't make so many mistakes. 9. We can't hear you well. Could you speak a bit \_\_\_? 10. We all ran pretty fast, but Andrew ran \_\_\_ than me, and Sam ran \_\_\_.

### **Exercise 69.**

*Open the brackets and give the comparative or superlative degree of the following adjectives and adverbs.*

1. That is (incredible) story I have ever heard, 2. It is not always (bright) students who do well in tests. 3. Terylene shirts are (hard) wearing, but cotton shirts are much (comfortable). 4. Which is (deep), Lake Michigan or Lake Superior? 5. She is far (self-confident) than she used to be. 6. (tall) man among the guests is a basketball player. 7. I like both of them, but I think Kate is (easy) to talk to. 8. Most people are (well off) than their parents used to be. 9. She has a lot to be thankful for; but (sad) thing of all is that she does not realize it, 10. I want to buy a car — (powerful) one you have. 11. You look a lot (sad) than you did last time I saw you. 12. There is nothing (irritating) than locking yourself out of your own house. 13. Both roads lead to the city centre, but the left-hand one is probably a bit (short) and (direct). 14. As I get (old), I notice the policemen seem to be getting (young). 15. The boys in our school are much (good-looking) and a lot (good) at football than the boys in other schools in the town.

### **Exercise 70,**

*Open the brackets and give the correct forms of the comparative constructions,*

*Example: (Much) you read, (well) you will know English. — The more you read, the better you will know English.*

1. (Interesting) the book is, (fast) you read it. 2. (Early) you come, (quickly) we finish the work. 3. (Hot) the weather is, (bad) I feel. 4. (Soon) he takes the medicine, (well) he will feel. 5. (Little) she ate, (angry) she was. 6. (Long) the children saw the film, (frightened) they felt. 7. (Late) you come, (little) you will sleep. 8. (Much) you study, (clever) you will become. 9. (Cold) the winter is, (hot) the summer will be. 10. (Near) you come up, (well) you will see the picture.

### **Exercise 71.**

*Translate into English.*

1. Чем больше он говорит, тем меньше его слушают, 2. Чем длиннее ночь, тем короче день, 3. Чем скорее вы придите за работу, тем быстрее вы ее закончите. 4. Чем больше вы будете находиться на свежем воздухе, тем лучше вы будете себя чувствовать. 5. Чем меньше женщину мы любим, тем больше нравимся мы ей. 6. Чем внимательнее вы будете делать домашнее задание, тем меньше ошибок вы сделаете. 7. Чем больше он работает<sup>1</sup>!, тем меньше времени он уделяет (devote) своей семье, 8. Чем больше он играл, тем больше он проигрывал. 9. Чем дальше мы шли, тем менее знакомым (familiar) казался лес. 10. Чем старше он становился, тем больше он походил на своего отца.

### **Exercise 72.**

Complete the sentences using the constructions as ... as or not so ... as/not as ... as. Choose the one from the box.

High poor beautiful important, tall crowded fast expensive big lazy

1. I know that your job is important, but my job is important too, My job is \_\_\_\_\_. 2. The bicycle is fast, but the car is faster. The bicycle is \_\_\_\_\_. 3. Her knowledge is poor, but he knows a bit more. His knowledge is \_\_\_\_\_. 4. He is lazy, but his brother is lazy too. He is \_\_\_\_\_. 5. Their furniture costs \$700, and ours is \$870. Their furniture is \_\_\_\_\_. 6. France is big. Belgium is not a big country.

Belgium is \_\_\_\_\_. 7. Her wages are \$200 a week, and mine are \$150. My wages are \_\_\_\_\_. 8. She is beautiful, but I like her sister better. I think, she is \_\_\_\_\_. 9. He is tall, but I am taller. He is \_\_\_\_\_. 10. Tverpkaya and Arbat are crowded streets. Tverskaya street is \_\_\_\_\_.

### Exercise 73.

*Complete the sentences with than ... or us... as or the same ..., as.*

1. Everybody was shocked. Nobody was more shocked \_\_\_\_\_ Nick. 2. I wish you were \_\_\_\_\_ pretty \_\_\_\_\_ your mother, 3. He is \_\_\_\_\_ age \_\_\_\_\_ my brother. 4. I earn \_\_\_\_\_ much money \_\_\_\_\_ he does. But she earns more \_\_\_\_\_ we both. 5. I ordered \_\_\_\_\_ drink \_\_\_\_\_ he did. 6. Your car is much more powerful \_\_\_\_\_ mine, but my small car is \_\_\_\_\_ expensive \_\_\_\_\_ yours. 7. I spent \_\_\_\_\_ much money \_\_\_\_\_ he did. But I \_\_\_\_\_ didn't spend \_\_\_\_\_ sum \_\_\_\_\_ Mary did. I spent much less money \_\_\_\_\_ she. 8. Petrol is more expensive now \_\_\_\_\_ a few years ago. 9. Prices are not \_\_\_\_\_ in the 1990s. 10. Paris is \_\_\_\_\_ exciting \_\_\_\_\_ London.

### Exercise 74.

*Translate into English.*

1. Он потратил не так много времени на перевод этой статьи, как вы. 2. Она сыграла свою роль сегодня так же хорошо, как и два дня назад. 3. В этот день Том написал столько же писем, сколько и вчера. 4. Эти новости не такие интересные, как те, которые мы слышали на прошлой неделе. 5. Он получил такое же образование, как и ты. 6. Сегодня мороз не такой сильный (severe), как вчера, Мы можем пойти погулять. 7. Товары в этом магазине не такие дорогие, как в том. 8. Уровень жизни (living standard) в России не такой высокий, как в США. 9. Новая машина Майкла такая же мощная, как и моя. 10. Движение на этой улице не такое интенсивное (heavy), как в центре.

### Exercise 75.

*A Make up sentences according to the example.*

*Example: He is (twice/old) she is. — He is twice as old as she is,*

1. He is not (half/clever) I thought. 2. It took her (three times/long) she expected. 3. She is not going to marry a man who is (twice/old) she is. 4. He can lift a box (three times/heavy) that one. 5. The new stadium is (several times/large) the old one. 6. He does it (two times/quickly) she does. 7. Petrol is (several times/expensive) it was two years ago. 8. Her new flat is (three times/ large) her old one. 9. Grapes in autumn are (several times/ cheap) they are in winter. 10. He spends (twice/much) we do.

*B Change the sentences according to the example.*

*Example: This book costs 4 dollars and that one costs 2 dollars. — This book costs twice as much as that one.*

1. Nick has 8 discs and I have 24 discs. 2. This TV model costs \$700 and that one \$350. 3. It took me 40 minutes and her 10 minutes to get there. 4. I earn \$2000 dollars and she earns \$1000. 5. This room is 12m<sup>2</sup> and that one is 24.

### Exercise 76.

*Translate into English.*

1. Ваше эссе (essay) в два раза длиннее моего. 2. Это дерево в два раза выше того. 3. Вам, и нравится этот пиджак? — Да, но он в три раза дороже того. 4. Сегодня в два раза холоднее, чем вчера. 5. Она выглядит в два раза моложе своей сестры. 6. Все его приятели в два раза старше него. 7. Хотя эта квартира и в два раза меньше той, она мне больше нравится. 8. Этот перевод вдвое легче того. Я уверен, ты с ним справишься (cope). 9. Спидометр (speedometer) показывает, что машина идет в два раза быстрее, чем раньше. 10. Если ты поедешь поездом, а не самолетом, ты доберешься туда в несколько раз медленнее.

### Exercise 77.

Make up sentences according to the example.

Example: No sooner he (arrive) home \_\_\_ he fell ill. — No sooner **had** he **arrived** home **than**, he fell ill. 2. Hardly he (arrive) home \_\_\_ he wanted to leave. — Hardly had he arrived home when he wanted to leave.

1. No sooner she (receive) the money \_\_\_ she went chopping. 2. No sooner he (open) the door \_\_\_ he felt the smell of gas. 3. Hardly they (come) into the house \_\_\_ the rain started. 4. No sooner he (eat) the first course \_\_\_ the telephone rang. 5. Hardly she (knock) at the door \_\_\_ he opened it. 6. Hardly the sun (rise) \_\_\_ they started off. 7. No sooner he (read) the newspaper article \_\_\_ he phoned her. 8. Hardly she (buy) a car \_\_\_, she got into an accident. 9. No sooner he (look) at the title \_\_\_ he realized that it was the book he had wanted for such a long time. 10. Hardly the meeting (begin) \_\_\_ the participants decided to re-elect the committee.

### Exercise 78.

Translate into English using the constructions of the previous exercise.

1. Он так устал, что, едва добравшись до дома, сразу же лег спать. 2. Едва лишь мы закончили работу, как зазвонил телефон. 3. Как только она вошла в комнату, как почувствовала, что в доме кто-то есть. 4. Едва она увидела мышь, как сразу же закричала. 5. Как только мы вышли из дома, сразу же пошел дождь. 6. Едва мы поздоровались (greet), как он сразу же подошел к телефону.

**Exercise 79.** Fill In the blanks with the words from the box.

close	pretty
right	straight
hard	fast
high	ill
deep	easy

1. They had to *dig* \_\_\_ to get oil. 2. His position was \_\_\_\_\_ uncertain. 3. This is the \_\_\_ way to do it. 4. When I came he was \_\_\_ asleep. 5. Please keep \_\_\_ to the subject. 6. He was walking \_\_\_, 7. His \_\_\_ ambitions are well known to everybody. 8. He dived \_\_\_ into the water and soon emerged at the opposite side of the river. 9. The baby is as \_\_\_ as a flower. 10. I saw him at a \_\_\_ distance. 11. He had to study \_\_\_ to be the first. 12. He is a \_\_\_ person to speak to. 13. We can't expect a \_\_\_ answer from him. 14. Take it \_\_\_! Everything will be all right. 15. They live \_\_\_ around the corner. 16. The engine is \_\_\_ to operate, 17. You shouldn't speak \_\_\_ about people. 18. This athlete can jump \_\_\_. 19. Tell me \_\_\_ what you think. 20. She looks quite \_\_\_.

### Exercise 80.

Find the appropriate Russian equivalents for the English adverbs.

- |            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| 1) shortly | a) вероятно    |
| 2) hardly  | b) внимательно |
| 3) nearly  | c) упорно      |
| 4) late    | d) весьма      |
| 5) hard    | e) почти       |
| 6) lately  | f) едва        |
| 7) sharp   | g) недавно     |
| 8) pretty  | h) поздно      |
| 9) closely | i) ровно       |
| 10) likely | j) вскоре      |

### Exercise 81.

Choose the appropriate adverb.

1. He lives quite (nearly/near). 2. You've come too (lately/late). 3. The mechanic examined the damaged car (closely/close). 4. It is (prettily/pretty) difficult to speak to her. 5. We have seen very little of you (lately/late). 6. She is always (prettily/pretty) dressed. 7. He (nearly/near) seized the rail. 8. I used to work (hardly/hard) to get everything I have got now. 9. His suggestion seemed (highly/high) improbable to us. 10. Her house stood (closely/close) to the river. 11. The wind was blowing so (hardly/hard) that I could (hardly/hard) walk. 12. The actress (justly/just) deserved the prize. 13. The plane flew (highly/high), we could (hardly/hard) see it. 14. (Shortly/ Short) after graduating I moved to the capital. 15. I could see the house door which was (widely/wide) open.

### Exercise 82.

*Choose the appropriate word.*

1. In spite of the coming danger he remained (calm/ calmly). 2. Though the dish smelt (good/well), he refused to eat saying he was not hungry. 3. She looked at me (angry/angrily) and told me to leave the room. 4. She spends a lot of money on her clothes but they always look (cheap/cheaply). 5. Have you seen him? — Yes, he looks (good/well) but he says he feels (bad/badly). 6. His cough sounds (terrible/terribly). He should see a doctor. 7. Be (quiet/quietly). Stop talking, behave yourselves. 8. The situation looks (bad/badly). We must do something. 9. He seemed to me a bit (strange/strangely) today. 10. The fish tastes (awful/awfully). I won't eat it. 11. He looked (good/well) in his new suit.

### Exercise 83.

*Translate into English paying attention to the adjectives and adverbs in bold type.*

1. У него **сильно** болит голова. Он едва может говорить. 2. Почему ты каждый день **опаздываешь** на работу? Ты, наверное, **встаешь** слишком поздно. 3. Как ты себя **чувствуешь** сегодня? — Спасибо, хорошо. 4. Ты **говоришь** слишком быстро. Они тебя не понимают. 5. Я **люблю** ходить в ресторан. Еда там всегда вкусная. 6. Он не очень хорошо себя чувствует сейчас. 7. Он **упорно** готовится к экзаменам. 8. Я очень устал. Я **плохо** спал вчера ночью. 9. Он **бегает** очень быстро. 10. Я не видел его последнее время. 11. Ну же, Ник! Почему ты всегда ешь так **медленно**? 12. Как приятно пахнут твои духи! 13. Ее работа очень трудная. Ей приходится **упорно** работать. Она едва успевает поесть.

14. Поезд **опоздал**, и поэтому я приехал домой поздно. 15. У нее **беглый** английский. Она говорит по-английски очень хорошо.

## The Numeral

### Exercise 84.

*Answer the questions. Write the numbers in full.*

1. How many minutes are there in two hours? 2. How many kilometers are there in a mile? 3. What is your normal temperature? 4. How much do you weigh? 5. How many cents are there in \$2,5? 6. How many days are there in a year? 7. When were you born? 8. What is your telephone number? 9. What is the number of your flat? 10. What is the approximate population of Russia?

### Exercise 85.

*Write these numbers in English.*

- |          |                                  |
|----------|----------------------------------|
| 1) 567   | 11) 3 August                     |
| 2) 6 1/2 | 12) 969 64 85 (telephone number) |
| 3) 3,267 | 13) ~3 Centigrade                |

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| 4) 8.93           | 14) (In) 1907                            |
| 5) 0.34           | 15) $3^3$                                |
| 6) $7\frac{1}{2}$ | 16) 3,000,000,000                        |
| 7) 2,359,000      | 17) 7,082                                |
| 8) 11.06          | 18) 40-0 (the result in a tennis game)   |
| 9) 58%            | 19) 37%                                  |
| 10) 9 May         | 20) 4-1 (the result in a football match) |

### Exercise 86.

*Write the answers to these sums and read them aloud.*

- 1) 47 and 34 is\_\_\_ 2) 33 multiplied by 4 is\_\_\_ 3) 45 times 4 is\_\_\_ 4) 314 plus 216 is\_\_\_  
 5) 112 minus 45 is\_\_\_ 6) Add 12 and 4, multiply by 8, then subtract 40 and divide by 11. You have got\_\_\_. 7) 90 divided by 6 is\_\_\_ 8) Divide 66 by 11, multiply by 5, add 20, and subtract 18. You have got\_\_\_.

### Exercise 87.

*Correct the mistakes (if any) in these sentences.*

- 1 The radio said that there were more than ten thousands people taking part in the meeting. 2. She bought two dozens eggs. 3. My birthday is on the twenty-one of March. 4. His telephone number is four six seven, five nought, nine two. 5. There are two hundred fifteen pages in this book. 6. Write down the following: zero point six hundred and twelve plus six point nought two. 7. This is twenty-five per cents of the total. 8. The game ended with the score three nought. 9. The temperature is two degrees *below* oh. 10. He was born in nineteen eighty-first.

### Exercise 88.

*Translate into English. Write the numbers in full.*

1. Он заплатил за это ожерелье (necklace) пятнадцать с половиной тысяч долларов. 2. Подождите полчаса, пожалуйста. Документы скоро будут готовы. 3. Нам нужно спешить. Самолет улетает через полто-Ра часа. 4. Сколько безработных (unemployed) в этом городе? — На сегодняшний день 2338 человек. Джейн купила три дюжины яиц. 6. Он родился 3 октября 1979 года. 7. На митинге присутствовало три тысячи студентов. 8. Тысячи студентов заканчивают колледжи Оксфорда к Кембриджа ежегодно. 9. Миллионы звезд ярко мерцали (sparkle) на черном южном небе. 10. Если тебе нужно вызвать пожарную команду (fire brigade), звони 01. 11. Его состояние (fortune) составляет три миллиона долларов. 12. Одна четверть равна 25-ти процентам. 13. Этот замок (castle) был построен во времена Генриха V. 14. Один дюйм (inch) равен двум с половиной сантиметрам. 15. Эти дома были построены в девяностые годы девятнадцатого века.

## Questions, Answers, Negatives

### Exercise 89.

*Form the general questions.*

*Example: My brother likes skating. — Does my brother like skating?*

1. He translates a lot of letters into English. 2. I had an early morning call at seven o'clock. 3. Little children like to ask many questions. 4. Their classes will last till four o'clock tomorrow. 5. I've already done this task. 6. She spends a lot of time on her English. 7. My children are at college. 8. They had supper at 7 o'clock. 9. I am going to play tennis in the evening. 10. They



were writing when I came. 11. She can play the guitar very well. 12. There are many people in the library now. 13. Brazil won the football World Cup in 1994. 14. He has already read a lot of English books. 15. They have classes at 9 every day.

**Exercise 90.**

*Form the alternative questions to the words in bold type.*

*Example: My brother likes skating (3). —Does your brother like skating or skiing? Does your or his brother like skating? Does your brother or Pete like skating?*

1. The film was exciting (2). 2. Thousands of people visited the exhibition (2). 3. He watches TV every day. (3) 4. They can go to the country on Friday. (3) 5. She has painted the walls. (3)

**Exercise 91.**

*Change the general questions into indirect ones. Begin your sentences with Do you know, I wonder or Tell me.*

*Example: Has he seen this movie before? —*

*Do you know if/whether he has seen this movie before?*

*Tell me please if/whether he has seen this movie before,  
I wonder if/whether he has seen this movie before.*

1. Is it common to give a waiter a tip? 2. Does he want to come round this evening? 3. Did you go out last night? 4. Are single-parent families becoming more common in Russia? 5. Is there anything you are very proud of? 6. Does she live in the flat above you? 7. Do they watch satellite TV or cable TV? 8. Does Internet influence our daily lives? 9. Did you go to a nursery school? 10. Have the police questioned a number of people about the crime? 11. Are trains more reliable than buses? 12. Has he arranged his meeting for tonight? 13. Are there lots of historical monuments in Vienna? 14. Is there a great mix of people in Paris? 15. Did he book a room at the hotel?

**Exercise 92,**

*Form the negative questions.*

*Example; She took part in the performance. — Didn't she take part in the performance? Or Did she not take part in the performance?*

1, I went to the cinema with my friends. 2. They usually go to bed very early» 3. They had finished work by 5 o'clock. 4. She will be studying at this time tomorrow. 5. There was an old bridge here. 6. He came home very late. 7. She understands Spanish a little. 8. They have a three-room flat. 9. He has been to the USA lately. 10. They are going to build a new house. 11. Your son loves music. 12. We are going to the theatre today. 13. There will be a lot of people at the lecture today. 14. We studied at college together. 15. His friends liked the film very much.

**Exercise 93.**

*Form the question tags.*

*Example: She has already come. — She has already come, hasn't she?*

1. They will return in a month. 2. Let's buy a loaf of bread. 3. Open the window. 4. I am late. 5. There is a theatre in the centre of the city. 6. She has never been to the Zoo. 7. I am right. 8. Don't go there. 9. Peter and Ann know English well. 10. He didn't do his homework. 11. Let's go to the country. 12. There were no mistakes in his dictation. 13. She won't be playing the piano at twelve. 14. They can't speak German at all. 15. She knows him.

**Exercise 94.**

*Correct the mistakes if any.*

1. Don't forget to bring the book, will you? 2. There aren't any apples left, are they? 3. He is sure to come, doesn't he? 4. Let's come a bit earlier to have better seats, don't we? 5. It isn't raining now, is it? 6. You and I talked to him last week, didn't you? 7. He won't be leaving tomorrow, will he? 8. She has never been afraid of anything, hasn't she? 9. They have got two children, do they? 10. The boys don't have classes today, do they? 11. I am to blame, aren't I?

12. We like to swim in the swimming pool, do we? 13. Nobody has come yet, haven't they?  
14. Please turn off the light, don't you? 15. He has never come back, hasn't he?

### Exercise 95.

*Put the words into the correct order (you must get special questions).*

1. time, his, always, who, in, is, lessons, for? 2. going, a, what, her, about, he, week, is, to, in, write, to? 3. about, did, speak, last, in, what, week, class, you? 4. this, you, read, how, month, books, have, many? 5. people, the, to, at, prefer, sometimes, do, study, why, library? 6. many, France, he, been, how, to, times, has? 7. kind, brave, we, of, call, people, what, do? 8. draws, which, them, well, of? 9. today, have, the, what, radio, heard, on, news, you? 10. USA, states, in, there, the, many, are, how?

### Exercise 96.

*Correct the mistakes if any.*

1. How often you have your English classes? 2. What you do at English lessons? 3. What you prepared for your lesson? 4. Who were absent from the previous lesson? 5. How many points you got for your exam? 6. Who do you usually go home with? 7. What countries the USA borders upon? 8. When did the briefing take place? 9. Who knows this district well? 10. Who did phone yesterday? 11. How long you have been studying English?

### Exercise 97.

*Form the special questions to the words in bold type (the number of questions is given in brackets).*

*Example: He went to **the theatre** (3). — Who went to the theatre? What did he do? Where did he go?*

1. **My working** day lasts **eight hours**. (3) 2. They **discussed** a **lot** of articles **on economics last weekend**. (6) 3. **1 have read this book** in the original. (3) 4. They were watching TV when **I came**. (4) 5. **1** was absent **because** I was **ill**. (2) 6. It took **me two hours** to get there. (2) 7. **They** are going **to travel by car**. (3) 8. **I** always speak English **to him**. (3) 9. She will **do the work in two days' time**. (3) 10. **I** taught him **to swim**. (3)

### Exercise 98.

*Change the special questions into indirect ones. Begin your sentences with Do you know, I wonder or Tell me please.*

*Example: What does the boss want? —*

*Do you know what the boss wants? Tell me please what the boss wants.*

1. How long does it take him to get there? 2. When did he meet her for the first time? 3. Who objects to Sunday work? 4. What is his date of birth? 5. Whose book is it? 6. When will the next conference take place? 7. How well does she play the piano? 8. Why are they buying a new house? 9. How long will the interview last? 10. What kind of chocolate tastes best? 11. Where did they spend their vacation? 12. Who does he know from Group 302? 13. How much does it cost to repair a bicycle? 14. How long have you known the Browns? 15. Whose bag is on the table?

### Exercise 99.

*Open the brackets and translate into English short replies with So ... or Neither/Nor ...*

*Example: He knows English. — (Она тоже). — So does she. She is not going there. — (Они тоже). — Neither/Nor are they.*

1. I am dead with hunger. — (Мы тоже). 2. We are very grateful to him. — (Я тоже). 3. My brother can't draw. — (Мой тоже). 4. We'll be meeting in the hall. — (Они тоже). 5. My father always gives me good advice. — (Мой тоже). 6. She did not go to the country because the weather was awful. — (Он тоже). 7. My sister's son has made much progress in English lately. — (Наш тоже). 8. We'll soon join them. — (Мы тоже). 9. I am not at all upset. — (Я тоже). 10. They enjoyed themselves at Ann's party. — (Мы тоже). 11. I never watch TV. — (Я тоже). 12. She has to get up early. — (Они тоже). 13. He hasn't got a car. — (Она тоже). 14. He is on the phone now. — (Мы тоже). 15. Nick can afford to buy a new house. — (Анна тоже).

### Exercise 100.

Show your disagreement (see the example).

Example: I did not like the film. — Didn't you? I did, He wants to go to the country. — Does he? I don't.

1. I feel tired. 2. He is eager to go to Great Britain. 3. She has never been to the Netherlands. 4. I don't like chemistry. 5. I am fond of the last book by this writer. 6. He is shocked with the news. 7. I like jogging in the morning, 8. He hasn't done the work yet. 9. We can play tennis well. 10. We can't stay here any longer.

### Test 3

Choose the right variant.

- The next day, Sunday, they both worked \_\_\_ from \_\_\_ early morning.  
a) hardly, the                      c) hard, \_\_\_  
b) hard, the                         d) hardly, \_\_\_
- You've been \_\_\_ working \_\_\_\_.  
a) hardly, lately                  c) hard, late  
b) hard, lately                      d) hardly, late
- And one day he saw two riders in a glade of - Hyde Park \_\_\_ to the Ham Gate.  
a) the, closely                      c) \_\_\_, close  
b) \_\_\_, closely                      d) the, close
- It is \_\_\_ early spring, but I don't think I ever remember \_\_\_\_\_ wonderful weather.  
a) \_\_\_, such, \_\_\_  
b) \_\_\_ such, a  
c) an, so, \_\_\_  
d) the, such, the
- I have got too \_\_\_ time and my \_\_\_ care will be to find the \_\_\_ way to the village because \_\_\_ school I'm going to is at the \_\_\_ end.  
a) little, next, nearest, the, farthest  
b) a little, nearest, nearest, the, furthest  
c) few, near, next, a, farther  
d) little, next, next, \_\_\_, further
- They had \_\_\_ walk in the morning, then spent \_\_\_ afternoon helping \_\_\_ friends to cut down trees. Actually they were \_\_\_, because \_\_\_ day was \_\_\_\_.  
a) ten-miles, \_\_\_, some, tired, \_\_\_ tiring  
b) ten-mile's, the, any, tiring, the, tired  
c) ten-mile, \_\_\_, \_\_\_, tiring, \_\_\_, tiring  
d) a ten-mile, the, some, tired, the, tiring
- At the present time \_\_\_ people can afford to travel \_\_\_ abroad for their holidays.  
a) lees, \_\_\_  
b) lesser, the  
c) fewer, \_\_\_  
d) fewer, an
- Granny can go \_\_\_ because she feels \_\_\_ very \_\_\_. But yesterday she could dress \_\_\_ without \_\_\_ help from me and then settled \_\_\_ in the armchair in the lounge.  
a) everywhere, herself, bad, herself, any, herself  
b) somewhere, \_\_\_, badly, \_\_\_, \_\_\_, \_\_\_\_.  
c) anywhere, herself, badly, \_\_\_, some, \_  
d) nowhere, \_\_\_, bad, \_\_\_, any, herself
- During \_\_\_ Middle Ages . \_\_\_ London increased twice \_\_\_ it was in size and wealth, But of course it is impossible to compare. \_\_\_ London of \_\_\_ Renaissance and \_\_\_ London of \_\_\_ nineties of our century.  
a) the, \_\_\_, as large as, the, the, the, the

- b) \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, as large as, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, the  
 c) the, the, larger than, \_\_\_\_, the, ..\_\_\_\_  
 d) the, \_\_\_\_, as larger as, the, the, the, the
10. Ann is \_\_ strange person. She has fallen in \_\_ love with Nick at \_\_ first sight. But I am sure that no sooner \_\_ to marry him \_\_ she will start to have a lot of doubt and finally she will refuse him.
- a) the, the, the, she will agree, than  
 b) a, \_\_\_\_, the, will she agree, then  
 c) a, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, will she agree, than  
 d) a, \_\_\_\_, \_\_, she agrees, when
11. Let us hire \_\_ boat and go for a row down \_\_ River Lee, \_\_? The river is here twice \_\_ Thames at \_\_ Waterloo Bridge.
- a) a, the, shall we, as large as, the, \_\_  
 b) the, \_\_\_\_, do we, as larger than, the, the  
 c) a, the, don't we, as larger as, the, \_\_  
 d) the, \_\_\_\_, shan't we, large as, \_\_\_\_, the
12. Well, I worked my way to \_\_ Suez on \_\_ board \_\_ ship whose captain had fallen ill.
- a) \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, the            c) \_\_\_\_, the, of  
 b) the. \_\_\_\_. a            d) the, \_\_\_\_, the
13. The \_\_ prisoner is tall, dark and has a beard. His looks \_\_ known and the police \_\_ seeking for him everywhere.
- a) escaping are, are    c) escaped, is, are  
 b) escaping, is, is    d) escaped, are, are
14. She has \_\_ money to do \_\_ job. Her proceeds \_\_ to \$2 \_\_.
- a) great amount of, so, a, comes, millions  
 b) a large amount, such, \_\_, come, million  
 c) a great amount of, such, a, come, million  
 d) large amount of, so, \_\_\_\_, comes, millions
15. \_\_ she saw him, \_\_ she was, and \_\_ without him.
- a) The more often, the more happier, the more she felt lonely  
 b) More often, happier, the lonelier she felt  
 c) The oftener, the happier, the lonelier felt she  
 d) The more often, the happier, the lonelier she felt
16. The professor looked \_\_ at the students' papers and then began to speak. His cold voice sounded \_\_.
- a) quick, terrible        c) quickly, terribly  
 b) quickly, terrible    d) quick, terribly
17. Of the two new teachers, one is \_\_ and \_\_,
- a) having experience, the others are not  
 b) experienced, another is inexperienced  
 c) experienced, the other is not  
 d) experiencing, other lacks experience
18. Because the first pair of pants did not fit \_\_, he asked for \_\_.
- a) properly, another pants  
 b) proper, others pants  
 c) proper, the others ones  
 d) properly, another pair
19. John said that no. \_\_ car could go \_\_.
- a) another, so fast like his car  
 b) the other, as fast like his car  
 c) others, as fast as the car of him  
 d) other, as fast as his car

20. I asked two people how to get to \_\_\_ Mall, but \_\_\_ knew.

- a) the, either of them
- b) \_\_\_\_, none of them
- c) the, neither of them
- d) the, both of them

## The Verb

### Verb and Subject Agreement

#### Exercise 101.

*Open the brackets and write the correct form of the verb.*

1. The driver as well as the passenger (be) hurt in the accident. 2. The salt and the pepper (be) put on the table. 3. Not only she, but also everybody (be) embarrassed by his rude manner. 4. Two hour's study (be) enough for him to prepare for a quiz. 5. Not only the teacher, but also the students themselves (be) tired. 6. He was at his wit's end. His last sixpence (be) spent. 7. She as well as we (be) highly satisfied with their work. 8. Not only the earth but also the planets (move) round the sun. 9. Two thousand dollars (be) wasted by him in the casino. 10. (Be) either of them ready to go there? 11. *Three Comrades* (be) a novel by Remark. 12. Bread and butter (be) his usual breakfast. 13. If either of them (take) a leave now, we won't be able to finish the project. 14. My aim and objective (be) to make English grammar clear to everyone. 15. I can wait, four weeks (be) not so long. 16. The grey and blue blanket (be) washed today. 17. A variety of questions (be) put to the lecturer. 18. The number of books which we have to read for the exams (be) considerable. 19. A great number of students (be) present at the conference. 20. The great majority of writers, Painters, and architects (be) talented people. 21. The pair (Ann and Nick) (be) so absorbed in their own conversation that their surroundings were of little importance to them. 22. The majority (believe) that we are in danger of becoming extinct because of our destructive policy. 23. The majority of people (believe) that he is guilty. 24. The number of young people entering higher institutions (be) increasing. 25. A great number of books (be) in bad condition because the building of the library needs repairing.

#### Verbs be, have, do

#### The Verb be

**Exercise 102.** Match the sentences on the left with their replies on the right. Pay attention to the use of the verb *to be*.

- 1) What's wrong with your son? a) Don't be in a hurry, we've got enough time.
- 2) The Browns are nice people. b) I am not interested in politics.
- 3) There is nothing to be seen. c) I am through with it.
- 4) I don't think it's difficult. d) I am sick and tired of his words. You shouldn't give in.
- 5) Have you finished the book? e) I am against going there.
- 6) It is not anybody's fault. f) He is starting a cold.
- 7) I don't like watching the news. g) It is a pity you haven't made up your mind yet.
- 8) Why haven't you finished the work in time? h) I am for inviting them to dinner.
- 9) He comes to see me every day and tries to persuade me. i) The problem is worth solving.
- 10) I am trying to choose the topic j) Nobody is to blame, for my essay.
- 11) Why are you so rushing about? k) Who is responsible for it?

#### Exercise 103.

*Give the interrogative and the negative forms of the sentences.*

1. They are to meet at 9 o'clock sharp. 2. She was to arrive at five o'clock in the afternoon, 3. We were to meet under the Big Clock at the station. 4. The luggage is to be examined at the

customs office. 5. The traffic regulations are to be observed. 6. He is to do the work tomorrow. 7. He is to leave for Washington one of these days. 8. Jack is to speak to the top manager tonight. 9. *The* delegation is to arrive in Moscow in a week. 10. Mr. Black is to take part in the talks.

#### **Exercise 104.**

*Choose the right variant.*

1. We were to (meet/have met) at 3, but she did not come. 2. I was to (come/have come) at 3, and I managed not to be late. 3. The train was to (leave/have left) at midnight, but there was a delay, and we started off at one in the morning. 4. She was to (phone/have phoned) in the evening. She rang me up in the morning. 5. He was to (speak/have spoken) to his new manager, and he was excited about it. 6. She was to (take/have taken) a difficult examination. 7. The prime minister was to (arrive/have arrived) yesterday. Because of his sudden disease the visit was postponed.

#### **Exercise 105.**

*Translate into English using the verb to be.*

1. Ей предстоит решить очень трудную задачу. 2. Я не знаю, что я должен сделать. 3. Ей сегодня предстоит собеседование (interview). Она очень волнуется. 4. В котором часу они должны провести переговоры (talks)? 5. Что нам делать? У нас нет денег. 6. Ей предстояло предпринять серьезный шаг. 7. Мы должны были встретиться в семь, но он почему-то (for some reason) не пришел. 8. Мне предстояло впервые покинуть дом. 9. Я должен был начать работу на прошлой неделе, но пере- • думал. 10. Нам предстоит организовать встречу.

#### **Exercise 106.**

*Choose the right variant.*

1. You (were being/were) very stupid last night. Why did you behave like this? 2. It (is/is being) very stuffy in here. Let's open the window, 3. He (is/is being) very generous. It's strange. He is not usually like that. 4. She (was/was being) so nice towards me. I am expecting an unpleasant surprise. 5. She (is/is being) always so kind to me. 6. It is so strange he has not made any mistakes. I think he (was/was being) so careful then. 7. She looks bad. — Yes. She (is/is being) very tired and depressed. 8. He (is/is being) so polite to me at present.

#### **The Verb have**

#### **Exercise 107.**

*Give the interrogative and negative forms of the following sentences.*

1. He has a lot of experience, 2. She has a bath every day. 3. She has got a lot of jewelry. 4. They have a lot of rare plants in their garden. 5. She usually has a rest after dinner. 6. They had late supper tonight. 7. We have got a lot of problems now. 8. They had a pleasant voyage last summer. 9. Her mother has a flat in the High Street. 10. The president has a bad cold.

#### **Exercise 108.**

*Change these sentences into the Present Continuous where possible making all necessary changes.*

*Example: They have parties on Sundays. — They are having a party now.*

1. She has got long dark hair. 2. They have a lot of friends. 3. She has a shower every evening. 4. Helen often has a chat with Robert

*Find and correct the mistakes.* 5. We usually have a good time at the weekend. 6. I have less money than before. 7. She has a heart for pets. 8. Does she have a telephone in her new apartment? 9. He has a swim every evening. 10. We have a lot of fun after work.

#### **Exercise 109.**

*Give the interrogative and negative forms of the following sentences.*

1. They *have* to go there. 2. Bess has got to stay here till late at night. 3. I often have to travel on business. 4. They had to buy tickets for the next train. 5. They

have to work a lot to earn money» 6. She has to take another exam. 7. We have got to leave the party because of our baby. 8. You have to get permission to go there. 9. She has to go shopping after work. 10. He has to see a dentist tomorrow» II. We had to change our plans. 12. He had to revise the rule to write the test well. 13. She has got to work at the weekend. 14. They had to spend more money OB this trip. 15. He has to go by underground. His car has broken down. 16. *She* has to keep to a diet.

### Exercise 110

*Fill In the blanks with the proper form of the verb? t<j ttave (to) or to have got (to)*

1. Last month he spent his holiday at the seaside. He \_\_\_ a room at the top of the hotel. 2. Mom, don't worry! We \_\_\_ a very good time here. 3. Yesterday I \_\_\_ get up early to catch the train. 4. He gave *up* teaching. He \_\_\_ no patience. 5. We \_\_\_ got to finish work at 4 o'clock. 6. She \_\_\_ a bath now. 7. \_\_\_ a look at this picture! I am sure it's a Dali. 8. I am sure he \_\_\_ some information to pass on you. 9. He \_\_\_ got a lot of work to do. 10. There are two kinds of speeches: there is the speech that a person makes when he \_\_\_ something to say and the speech when he \_\_\_ say something.

### Exercise 111.

*Change the following sentences into question tags.*

1. She'll have to stay at home these days. 2. He often has to go to the dentist. 8. We have to begin the experiment at five o'clock. 4. They had to lay the fire. 5. You look a bit tired, you've had a long walk. 6. She has to go there twice a week. 7. As they understood, he had to stay there for a fortnight. 8. He had to finish work by Thursday. 9. They never have dinner at home. 10. They had a new car.

### Exercise 112.

*Choose the right variant making all necessary changes,*

1. What I (be/have) to do? 2. Not a sound (be/have) to be heard. 3. They were late, they (be/have) to wait for the bus. 4. According to the plan we (be/have) to finish the work in two days. 5. A new reader (be/have) to appear in the near future. 6. He (be/have) to buy a small car because he did not have enough money for a bigger one. 7. She (be/have) to buy the tickets for the next day because all the tickets had been sold out. 8. A new satellite (be/ have) to be launched in June. 9. We (be/have) to hurry because our friends were waiting for us. 10. The lecture (be/have) to begin at 11 o'clock.

### Exercise 113.

*Translate into English using the verb to have to or to be to.*

1. Ему придется работать вместо (instead of) нее. 2. Им пришлось работать допоздна? 3. Я вынужден сейчас уйти. Мне предстоят важные переговоры (talks). 4. Мне не нужно завтра работать, у меня выходной (day off). 5. Мы должны были встретиться в 5, а так как я мог опоздать, мне пришлось взять такси. 6. Вам приходится много работать на компьютере, не так ли? 7. Она спешила домой. Ей предстояло приготовить ужин для гостей. 8. Она

должна была вчера позвонить, но ей пришлось срочно (urgently) уехать. 9. Простите, что опоздал. Вам пришлось долго ждать? 10. Мне не надо переводить эту статью.

### **The Verb do**

#### **Exercise 114.**

*Change the verbs in bold type by the appropriate form of the verb to do.*

1. Peter speaks English as well as Ann speaks. 2. He spent as much money as you spent. 3. She reads as fast as you read. 4. They showed us more sights than our guide showed. 5. Mary sang much better than Emily usually sings. 6. He likes the same dishes as you like. 7. She uses the same perfume as I use. 8. He answered more questions than Pete answered. 9. The new teacher spoke much faster than our old teacher speaks. 10. She plays the piano as well as a professional plays. 11. We reached the camp earlier than our friends reached. 12. You know her as well as I know. 13. She likes to see the same films as he likes.

#### **Exercise 115.**

*Make the sentences more emphatic.*

*Example: Please sit down. — Do sit down, please. He **went** there. — He did go there.*

1. He loves her. 2 Say something! Don't keep silent, 3. I want you to believe me that he is trustworthy. 4. She wanted to get an excellent mark. 5. Listen to her, it's very important, 6. I wanted to leave. 7. "But I mean it!" she cried. 8. Treat him more trustingly, it's your duty! 9. They had to find the way out. 10. Stop playing the fool, please. 11. At last he received the job he had wanted for such a long time. 12. Come, Ann; I'm waiting. I really must ask you to be reasonable and listen to what I said and say. 13. I want to show you my house today. 14. Life changed for them.

### **The Indicative mood**

#### **The Use of Tenses**

#### **Exercise 116.**

*Complete the sentences with the words from the box using them in the proper form of the Present Indefinite Tense.*

look	be
go	seem
have	rain
start	eat
take	snow
speak	win

1. The child, \_\_\_ to school every day. His father \_\_\_ him there in his car, 2. She always \_\_\_ lunch at school. 3. Richard's life in Paris is a bit difficult. He \_\_\_ only English. 4. What's the matter? You \_\_\_, very sad. 5. Liz is good at tennis. She \_\_\_ every game. 6. It \_\_\_ quite reasonable. 7. Winter is warm here. It \_\_\_ very seldom. But sometimes it \_\_\_. 8. Helen is on a diet. She \_\_\_ a little. 9. He \_\_\_ in a hurry. 10. The exams at school \_\_\_ in April.



**Exercise 117.**

*Open the brackets and use the proper tense.*

1. Linda and I (work) for a company, which (produce) automobiles. 2. We both (work) at an office which (be) just in front of the factory where cars (be made). 3. I (start) work at ten o'clock, and Linda (come) to the office at nine. 4. She (be) good at typing, she (write) letters and reports every day. 5. She (not know) French very well, so she often (go) to the sixth floor where I (work), 6. I sometimes (help) her translate letters, as I (know) French rather well. 7. Linda also (answer) telephone calls, sometimes she (show) visitors around the factory. 8. She (do) common paperwork, she (write) memos, (file) reports, (answer) letters. 9. She often (arrange) meetings for her boss and other managers of the company. 10. You (understand) what her job (be)? Yes, she (be) a secretary. 11. But she (not like) her job and (want) to be a manager.

**Exercise 118.**

*Find and correct fifteen mistakes in the spelling of the following present participles.*

copiiing, putting, translateing, telling, closing, sitting, seing, giving, meetting, being, forgeting, lieing, getting, filing, swimming, betting, quitting, spreadding, eatting, begining, paing, openning, cutting, forbiding, laying, splitting, winning, dying, stoping

**Exercise 119.**

*Open the brackets and put the verb into the Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous Tense.*

1. Be quiet, please. We (work) at the translation and you (make) a lot of noise. 2. He always (go) for a walk in the evening. 3. Where is Jack? — He (meet) his girlfriend at the station. She (come) at 12 o'clock. 4. She (cry). Is something wrong? 5. In the morning I (have) little time, so I (take) a shower in the evening. 6. A decade (describe) a period of ten years. 7. Her brother (work) in Canada at present. 8. She always (dream) but (do) nothing to realize her dreams. 9. He (be) so suspicious to me at the moment. I wonder why. 10. Hurry up, Jane! We all (wait) for you. 11. Turn off the gas. Don't you see the kettle (boil)? 12. The children are still ill but they (get) better gradually. 13. Don't bother her. She (take) her French lesson: she always (take) it in the morning. 14. The living standards (change). Every month things (get) more expensive. 15. Tom and Mary (leave) for the Netherlands tomorrow. 16. I have just started English courses. I (study) English grammar. 17. Mercury (boil) at 357.23 degrees Centigrade. 18. We must buy new plates. — It's useless. You always (break) plates. 19. It (surprise) me that they can't sell their flat. 20. A woman who (look) after other people's children is a nanny.

**Exercise 120.**

*Correct the verbs in bold type if the tenses are wrong.*

1. The clock is striking, it's time to finish your studies. 2. They are understanding the problem now. 3. Where is John? — He prepares his lessons; he usually prepares them at that time. 4. They are glad to know that their son is

coining home next week. 5. The evening is warm, but you are shivering. Is anything the matter? — Nothing serious, I am feeling cold. 6. Can I see Mr. Green? — I am sorry, you can't: he has dinner. 7. The soup is tasting delicious. 8. Now I am seeing what you are driving at. 9. He believes in God and is always going to church on Sundays. 10. I am hating to speak to him. He is always complaining and forgetting what to do. 11. They are being so nice to me at present. I am feeling they are liking me. 12. He often changes his political view's. Now he is belonging to the Conservative Party. 13. Look! Somebody tries to open your car. 14. Oh, I won't take this dish. It is smelling awful. 15. How can I recognize him? I haven't met him. — He is wearing a yellow leather jacket and green jeans. 16. She usually drinks tea in the morning, but today she drinks coffee. 17. The last train is leaving the station at 11.50. 18. He is wanting to buy a car, but first he must learn to drive, so he is taking his driving lessons. 19. I can't stand him. He is liking to mock at people. He is always laughing at us when we meet. 20. Don't laugh at lessons, you are always laughing too much and the teachers are usually complaining of you.

### **Exercise 121.**

*Translate from Russian into English.*

1. Питер обычно делает домашние задания перед ужином. 2. Почему ты идешь так быстро? — Я боюсь опоздать (miss) на поезд. Обычно я выхожу из дома раньше и иду медленно, 3. Какие новые предметы студенты изучают в этом году? 4. Почему он сегодня такой заботливый? Странно, обычно он ведет себя по-другому. 5. Мистер Томпсон сейчас живет в Праге. — Что он там делает? — Он преподает английский. 6. Сегодня идет снег. Обычно зима здесь теплая, и снег идет редко. 7. Я не могу больше с вами разговаривать. Почему вы всегда критикуете (criticize) все, что я делаю? 8. Что с тобой? Ты очень бледная. Как ты себя чувствуешь? — У меня сильно болит голова. 9. Когда они улетают в Нью-Йорк? — На следующей неделе. 10. Что ты делаешь? Зачем ты кладешь соль в кофе? 11. Сейчас кризис, и цены растут очень быстро. 12. Как вкусно пахнет кофе! Сделай мне чашечку, только без сахара.

### **Exercise 122,**

*Open the brackets and give the proper forms of the Past Indefinite Tense.*

1. The building of the trade centre (begin) a month ago. 2. It (be) bitterly cold yesterday. I (put) on my warm coat but I (catch) a cold still. 3. The postman (bring) the morning mail only at 10 o'clock. 4. I (see) you the other day coming out of the library with a stack of books. Are you preparing for the exams? 5. We (have) a picnic yesterday, but the rain (spoil) the whole pleasure. 6. You (go) to the South when you (be) a child? 7. As soon as I came up, they (get) into a taxi and (go) away. 8. What sights you (see) when you (be) in Egypt? 9. Every winter Nick (go) to the Swiss Alps to ski, 10. He (come) in, (take) off his hat, (move) a chair to the table and (join) the conversation. 11. When he (arrive)? — The plane was delayed and he (come) two hours later. 12. How much your bag (cost)? — I (pay) \$80 for it.

### Exercise 123,

*Read an extract and open the brackets using the proper tenses.*

Positano (stand) on the side of a steep hill and is a very picturesque place. In winter lots of painters, male and female, (crowd) its two or three modest hotels, but if you (come) there in summer you will have it to yourself. The hotel (be) clean and cool and there (be) a terrace where you can sit at night and look at the sea. Down on the quay there (be) a little tavern where they (offer) you macaroni, ham, fresh-caught fish and cold wine.

One August, tiring of Capri where I had been staying, I (make up) my mind to spend a few days at Positano, so I (hire) a fishing boat and (row) over, I (arrive) at Positano in the evening. I (stroll) up the hill to the hotel, I (be surprised) to learn that I was not its only guest. The waiter, whose name was Guiseppe, (tell) me that an American signore had been staying there for three months. "Is he a painter or a writer or something?" I (ask). "No, signore, he (be) a gentleman. You will see the signore at the tavern. He always (dine) there," (say) Guiseppe.

### Exercise 124.

*A Give news about yourself and other people to a friend of yours. Use the words given to make sentences in the Present Perfect Tense.*

*Example: My sister/get married. — My sister has got married*

1. I/find/a new job. 2. My father/retire. 3. Jane and Mike/go to work/to Australia. 4. I/buy/a new motorcycle. 5. My niece/start to walk. 6. The Browns/move/to another town. 7. Jack's Grandpa/die. 8. I/join/another football club. 9. Nick and Rita/divorce. 10. John/receive/ a fortune, he/become/a millionaire.

*B Ask your friend who is in the USA questions about what he or his relatives have seen or done (use the Present Perfect Tense).*

*Example: You/have/a good journey? — Have you had a good journey?*

1. You/already/see/the Great American Lakes? 2. You/be/to Broadway? 3. Mike/manage to see/the Statue of Liberty? 3. What/new places/your brother/show to you? 4. Ann/visit/the White House? 5. Your father/get/promotion? 6. You/receive/your driving license? 7. Your brother/change/a car? 8. What kind of house/you/buy<sup>1</sup>

*C Say what you or your friends have not done yet (year, month, etc.).*

*Example: I/not be/to the theatre/this month. — I have not been to the theatre this month,*

1. Sue/not read/Gone with the Wind/yet. 2. Jill/not enter/London University/this year. 3. Larry/not produce/ a new film/yet. 4. Peggy and Paul/not move/to another flat this month. 5. Pete/not finish/his project yet. 6. My cousin/not get married/this month. 7. Mrs. Brown/not recover/yet. 8. They/not go/on business/this week.

### Exercise 125.

*Open the brackets and put the verb into the correct tense, either the Present Indefinite, the Present Continuous or the Present Perfect.*

1. As a rule, I (have) porridge for breakfast, but this morning I (order) an omelette. 2. This is the house where I (live). I (live) here since childhood. 3.

Stop smoking! The room (be) full of smoke which (come) from your pipe. Usually nobody (smoke) here as Mother (not let) it. 4.1 (write) letters home once a week, but I (not write) one this week, so my next letter must be rather long. 5. No wonder she (look) tired after the strain under which she (be) for a month. 6. Why you (not shave) this morning? — I (shave) every other day. 7. Research (show) that lots of people (absorb) new information more efficiently at some times of day than at others. A biological rhythm (affect) different people in different ways. 8.1 just (look) at the barometer and (see) that it (fall) very quickly. 9. Don't shout so loudly. Father (not finish) work and he hates if anybody (make a noise) while he (work). 10.1 regularly (see) him at the tram stop, but I (not see) him these two or three days.

### **Exercise 126.**

*Open the brackets and put the verb into the correct tense, either the Past Indefinite or the Present Perfect.*

1. You (find) the money which you (lose) yesterday? — Yes, I (find) it in the pocket of my coat when I (come) home. 2. The rain (stop) but a strong wind is still blowing, 3. You (see) Nick today? — Yes, but he already (leave). 4. We never (see) him. We don't even know what he looks like. 5. She (meet) them in the Globus theatre last afternoon. 6. How long you (know) him? — We (meet) in 1996, but we (not see) each other since last autumn. 7. He (live) in St. Petersburg for two years and then (go) to Siberia. 8. When he (arrive)? — He (arrive) at 2 o'clock. 9.1 (read) this book when I was at school. 10.1 can't go with you because I (not finish) my lessons yet. 11. The clock is slow. — It isn't slow, it (stop). 12. He (leave) for Canada two years ago and I (not see) him since. 13. This is the fifth cup of coffee you (have) today! 14. It is the most beautiful place I (visit). 16 I (not see) Nick lately. Anything (happen) to him? ~- Yes, he (get) into an accident three weeks ago. Since that time he (be) in hospital. 16. Why you (switch on) the light? It isn't dark yet. 17. He (do) everything already? — Yes, he (do) his part of work long ago. 18. The last post (come)? — Yes, it (come) half an hour ago. 19. When you (meet) him last? 20. You ever (be) to Japan? — Yes, I (be) there the year when there was an earthquake. 21. The discussion already (begin). Why are you always late? 22. Why you (take) my pen while I was out? You (break) it. 23. You never (tell) me why you're called Tony when your name is John. 24, Her father (die) when she was a small girl. 25. They (not meet) since they (leave) school. 26. The rain (stop). Come out, I want to speak with you.

### **Exercise 127.**

*Match the two halves of these sentences.*

- 1) He caught a cold            a) all day.
- 2) She has been interested , in maths   b) before.
- 3) They went out                c) since last year.
- 4) He has been in love   with her   d) when he was six.
- 5) The Nobel Fund was set up   e) up to now.
- 6) He has been engaged   at the plant   f) when he had to wait for the bus.

- 7) He hasn't been abroad g) a few minutes ago.  
 8) I've visited seven countries h) in the first half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century.  
 9) Mary and Nick have never quarrelled like i) since she began to study it.  
 this  
 10) My son started school j) for two years.

**Exercise 128.**

*Choose the correct variant.*

1 \_\_\_ever\_\_\_ to this museum? — Yes, I\_\_\_it once when I\_\_\_a youth, and the pictures\_\_\_ a deep impression on me. Since then I\_\_\_there.

- a) did you be, visited, was, made, was not  
 b) were you, visited, was, have made, was not  
 c) have you been, have visited, were, have made, have not been  
 d) have you been, visited, was, made, have not been

2. I \_\_\_Jack lately. When \_\_\_him last? — I \_\_\_ mm two days ago. I \_\_\_ that he \_\_\_very much.

- a) did not see, have you seen, met, thought, changes  
 b) have not seen, did you see, met, think, changed  
 c) have not seen, you saw, met, think, changed  
 d) do not see, have you seen, have met, thought, would change

3. The Egyptian civilization. \_\_\_ the oldest which \_\_\_ us art. It \_\_\_about five thousand years ago. The story of Egyptian art \_\_\_three thousand years and \_\_\_ the art of different periods.

- a) is, left, began, covers, includes  
 b) was, leaves, has begun, covered, included  
 c) is, has left, \was began, has covered, has included  
 d) has be?n, left, began, covers, included

4. \_\_\_ your tennis racket with you? — Yes, I am going to show you how much I \_\_\_ since last summer. I \_\_\_tennis lessons now. Now it \_\_\_for you to judge if I \_\_\_ any progress,

- a) did you bring, improved, take, is, have made  
 b) have you brought, improved, take, was, have made  
 c) did you bring, have improved, am taking, is, made  
 d) have you brought, have improved, am taking, is, have made

5. \_\_\_lunch already? — No, not yet. The waitress my order fifteen minutes ago and \_\_\_me anything yet.

- a) have you, took, has not brought  
 b) have you had, took, has not brought  
 c) did you have, has taken, did not bring  
 d) have you have, was taken, was not brought

**Exercise 129.**

*Translate the following sentences using the Past Indefinite or the Present Perfect.*

1. Где мистер Андерсен? — Он уехал в Гаагу. — Когда? — Несколько дней тому назад. — А я никогда не был в Нидерландах, хотя хочу там побывать уже несколько лет. 2. Вы когда-нибудь были в Санта-Барбаре? — Да. — Когда вы там были в последний раз? — В прошлом году. 3. Где Анна? Почему она не пришла в институт? Я ее сегодня не видел. С ней что-нибудь случилось? — Да нет, Анна здесь. Она только что пошла на лекцию. Но лекция уже началась, так что ты не сможешь сейчас с ней поговорить. 4. Вы были в театре на Бродвее? Что вы там смотрели? Когда вы там были в последний раз? 5. В последнее время я не получала писем (hear from) от своих родителей. — Когда ты получила последнее письмо? — Месяц назад. С тех пор я уже отправила им несколько писем. 6. Пойдемте в ресторан обедать. — С удовольствием. Я еще не обедал. — А когда вы завтракали? — Поздно утром, но я уже давно хочу есть. 7. Погода изменилась со вчерашнего дня. Очень холодно, идет снег и дует сильный ветер. 8. Они уже ушли? — Да, они вышли ровно в семь. 9. Они познакомились полгода тому назад у моей подруги, но с тех пор не виделись. 10. Я скучаю по своей семье. Мне кажется, я не был дома уже целую вечность. Моя командировка длится уже полгода. 11. Вы уже написали контрольную работу? Покажите мне ее» 12. Давно вы приехали? Видели его? — Я приехала вчера, Я видела его и говорила с ним сегодня после завтрака. 13. Месяца три спустя он уехал в Африку, С тех пор они не встречались. 14. Я давно пришла сюда. Я здесь с 9 часов. 15. У тебя с тех пор немного потемнели волосы,, 16. Мы только что продали последний экземпляр этой книги. Жаль, что вы не сказали нам, что она вам нужна» 17. Когда я заболел? — Три дня назад. Я с ним со вчерашнего дня. 18. Я узнал ваш телефон в справочном бюро (enquiry office) и звонил вам несколько раз, но никто не отвечал. 19. Вы давно здесь? — Нет, я только что пришел. 20. Он научился плавать в детстве. Они тогда были на юге.

### Exercise 130.

*Complete the sentences with the verbs from the box using the Present Perfect Continuous Tense,*

run	make
study	work
consider	do
walk	speak
wait	paint
snow	try

1. He \_\_\_ for two hours, tell him to rest a little. 2 "I \_\_\_ a long time for you," said my friend with a displeased air. 3. They \_\_\_ a noise since I came here. 4. How long you \_\_\_ to get in touch with your friend? 5. Your face is dirty with paint. What you \_\_\_? You \_\_\_ the house? 6. They \_\_\_ this problem for more than two hours. 7. I ask you to keep to the point, You \_\_\_ for fifteen minutes,

but the subject of your report is not clear yet. 8. He is a rather experienced specialist. He \_\_\_ his business for seven years. 9. There is a lot of snow in the street as it \_\_\_ since yesterday. 10. How long your brother \_\_\_ as a doctor? 11. I've got sore feet. We \_\_\_ for six hours already.

### Exercise 131

*Open the brackets and put the verbs into the Present Perfect Continuous Tense or the Present Perfect Tense.*

1. I (try) to get into contact with them for a long time, but now I (give) it up as hopeless» 2. My shortsighted uncle (lose) his spectacles. We (look) for them everywhere but we can't find them, 3. She (be) of great help to us since she (live) for such a long time with us, 4. You ever (work) as interpreter? — Yes, that is what I (do) for the last five months, 5. They (make up) their quarrel? — I don't know. I only know that they (not be) on speaking terms since September. 6. Our pilot (ask) for permission to take off for ten minutes already, but he (get) no answer yet. 7. A skilful photographer (help) me with the development of summer films for two weeks, but we (develop) only half of them, 8. I (know) them since we met at Ann's party» 9. You (open) the door at last» I (ring) for an hour at least, it seems to me. 10. Look, the typist (talk) all the time, she already (miss) several words.

### Exercise 132

*Open the brackets and put the verbs into the proper tense, either the Present Continuous or the Present Perfect Continuous Tense.*

1. Don't come in, He (take) an exam. He (take) his exam for half an hour already. 2. Where are the children? — They (play volleyball). They (play volleyball) since ten o'clock, 3. I (learn) to type for a month and can say that my typing (improve). 4. Nick (come) round to see us as tonight. 5\* He (stay) at his sister's for six weeks» He (try) to find somewhere to live. 6. We can't dance as my father (work) in the study. He (prepare) a report. He (write) it for the whole day. 7. Do you see what the child (do) with your hat? Take it from him. 8. They still (discuss) the article? But they (do) it since twelve o'clock! 9. The prices (go up)» They (rise) since 1991, 10. What a strong wind (blow)! It (blow) since yesterday.

### Exercise 133,

*Open the brackets and put the verbs into the proper tense (the Present Indefinite, the Present Continuous, the Present Perfect Continuous or the Present Perfect Tense).*

1. It (snow) steadily the whole week and it still (snow). 2» We (climb) for six hours already, but we (not reach) the top of the mountain yet. 3. The pain already (go) but the child still (cry), 4. The workers (work) very hard these two weeks, they (be) busy with the interior decoration of the house» 5. He (solve) the crossword puzzle for an hour and he (say) he (be) about to solve it as he (think) over the last word 6. He (work) at the language all the time and (make) great progress. His pronunciation (be) rather good, only a slight accent (remain). 7., He (finish) the first part of his book and now he (write) the second. He

(work) at his book for two years, 8. Dusliri Hoffman, who (play) the hero, (give) a fine performance. 9. Why your hair (be) wet? You (swim)? 10. Doctors and scientists (show) recently the benefit of fish in the diet.

### **Exercise 134.**

*Translate into English.*

1. Он наш тренер (trainer) с тех пор, как я начал играть в этой команде. 2. Они уже приняли решение (take a decision) по этому вопросу? — Нет. Они все еще спорят (argue). Они обсуждают этот вопрос уже два часа и еще не пришли ни к какому решению, 3. Утро было солнечное, но с одиннадцати погода изменилась, и сейчас идет дождь. 4. Чем вы занимаетесь с тех пор, как мы расстались (part)? 5. Мэри уже приехала? — Да, она уже здесь два дня. Она приехала в пятницу. 6. Студенты пишут контрольную работу уже два часа. Пока только двое сдали работы. 7. Гроза (thunderstorm) прошла, но небо покрыто темными тучами, и дует сильный ветер. 8. Вы прочитали книгу, которую я вам дала? 9. Вы плохо выглядите. Вы много работали на этой неделе? — Да. Я работаю над переводом уже десять дней, но сделала только половину. 10. Что здесь делает этот человек? — Он ждет секретаря. Она еще не пришла на работу.

### **Exercise 135.**

*Open the brackets and use either the Past Indefinite or the Past Continuous.*

1. We (walk) in silence when he suddenly (ask) me to help him. 2. I just (have) breakfast when the telephone (ring). When I came back to my coffee, it (be) cold. 3. When I (finish) my letter in the hall, a tall beautiful woman with red hair (enter). A dog (follow) her. 4. Ann (drop) two cups while she (wash up) last night, but neither of the cups (break). 5. I (walk) along the street watching what (go on) around me. Fast cars (rush) in both directions and it (be) impossible to cross the street. 6. The old man who (sit) on the bench beside me (keep) silence. Then suddenly he (turn round) to me and (begin) to speak. 7. I (stand) near the fence when suddenly I (hear) the voices. 8. He well (remember) the day when he first (go) to school. 9. We (talk) about Jim when he (run) into the room. 10. The day was marvelous: the sun (shine), the birds (sing) so we (decide) to go for a walk. 11. Miss Brown's telephone (ring) when she (dress). 12. I (light) my pipe and (nod) to him to show that I (listen). 13. When he (come) into the office the secretary (do) a crosswords puzzle. 14. Why you (not listen) to me while I (speak)? 15. He (wait) for her, but she never (come).

### **Exercise 136.**

*Find the mistakes if any. Use the proper tense.*

1. When I came, he was having breakfast. 2. When she worked there, she often made mistakes. 3. When he was phoning, she had a bath, 4. While I was ironing, he read a newspaper, 5. I cooked supper when I heard this news. 6. He was working in this company in 1997. 7. I could not answer your call, I worked in the garden then. 8. They wished to stay because they enjoyed themselves, 9. Were you quarreling all evening? 10. The train was approaching the city when it was raining heavily, 11. The secretary still typed when the boss came in



and was putting some documents on the table. 12. When he came up to the square, he saw a lot of people: they sang, danced and shouted. They were celebrating New Year, 13. Just as I was coming into the room, the students discussed the first report. 14, All the time I was writing, he was annoying me with silly questions. 15, The children played while the mother put the room in order.

### **Exercise 137.**

*Choose the right variant using the Present Perfect, the Past Indefinite or the Past Continuous Tense.*

1. While I (was waiting/waited/have waited) for him to call up, he (had/was having/have had) a good time in the bar. 2. She (has written/wrote/was writing) this exercise yesterday at 8 o'clock. 3. He (has invited/was inviting/ invited) me to the party yesterday. 4.1 (passed/have passed/ was passing) my exam in history today. 5. He (read/has read/was reading) a book two days ago. 6. They (have seen/ saw/were seeing) this film last week. 7. She (painted/has painted/was painting) the picture when I came. 8.1 (made/ have made/was making) my report when you entered the hall. 9. They (learnt/were learning/have learnt) the new words yesterday from three till seven. 10. It (rained/has rained/was raining) this week. 11. She (was having/had/ has had) a bath at seven o'clock last night. 12. She (was washing/washed/has washed) dishes already. 13. They (had/have had/were having) supper when the telephone rang, 14.1 (didn't meet/haven't met/was not meeting) you for ages. 15. Last summer he (has gone/was going/ went) to the Caucasus. 16, She was thoughtfully looking at him while he (read/was reading/has read) a newspaper. 17. While I (swept/was sweeping/has swept) the floor, Mrs, Parker began cooking. 18.1 just (had/have had/was having) a telegram to say that my poor friend is badly ill again. 19. We (sat/were sitting/have sat) in silence for a few minutes. He (spoke/was speaking/has spoken) at last. 20. While she (washed/was washing/has washed up), she (was hearing/heard/has heard) the doorbell, then voices. 21. "She (was making/made/has made) tea, let's go to the dining room". 22. Only two stars (shone/were shining/ has shone) in the dark blue sky. 23. On glancing at the address, he observed that it (contained/was containing/ has contained) no name. 24. He just (left/was leaving/has left) the hall when a stranger (entered/was entering/has entered). 25.1 (met/was meeting/have met) Ann at her father's house twenty years ago and (knew/have known/ was knowing) her ever since.

### **Exercise 138.**

*Choose the right variant.*

1. Higher education in the US\_\_\_in 1636 when the first colonists\_\_\_Harvard College.

- a) has begun, founded
- b) began, have founded
- c) began, founded
- d) was beginning, have founded

2. Noah Webster\_\_\_ *An American Dictionary of the English Language* in two volumes in 1828, and since then it\_\_\_the recognized authority for usage in the United States.

- a) published, became
- b) has published, has become
- c) published, was becoming
- d) published, has become

3. He\_\_\_at Oxford then. He was not the best student, though he \_\_\_ well known among the second year students.

- a) was studying, became
- b) was studying, has become
- c) studied, became
- d) has studied, has become

4. One day when he\_\_\_home he\_\_\_a boy who\_\_\_ him from the opposite side of the street.

- a) was walking, saw, watched
- b) walked, has seen, was watching
- c) was walking, saw, was watching
- d) has walked, has seen, has watched

5. It was midnight. She\_\_\_\_\_ in her lonely room. The rain driven by the rain\_\_\_ against the window.

- a) sat, beat
- b) was sitting, was beating
- c) has sat, beat
- d) has been sitting, has been beating

### **Exercise 139,**

*Translate into English.*

1. Я так и не увидел Великие озера. Когда поезд проезжал этот район, была ночь. 2. Пока директор вел беседу с представителями (representative) иностранных фирм (firm), секретарь сортировала утреннюю почту. 3. Том Соьер не мог играть со своими товарищами Он красил забор (fence). 4. Уже садилось солнце, когда я подъехал к Эдинбургу. 5. Он вел машину на большой скорости, б. Они вышли, когда еще было светло, но черные тучи собирались на горизонте (horizon) и дул холодный северный ветер. 7. Ей было очень труд-И но жить с миссис Грин в одной комнате (share a room), так как та постоянно жаловалась (complain of) на холод и на плохое обслуживание. 8. Она шла по темной улице и оглядывалась, Кто-то следил (follow) за ней. 9. О я выглянул из окна. Много людей стояло около дома» 10. Когда я вошла в комнату, она плакала, 11. Мы катались на лыжах, хотя шел снег. 12. В тот день у нас было много работы, т.к. вечером мы уезжали. 13. Мы познакомились (get acquainted), когда сдавали вступительные (entrance) экзамены. 14. Вчера он был занят, он чинил (fix) телевизор. 15. Он вошел в комнату, поздоровался (greet) со всеми и сел у окна. 16. Она готовилась к экзаменам. 17. Когда часы пробили одиннад-

цать, он все еще работал. 18. Дождь начался в тот момент, когда она вышла в сад. 19. По вечерам он имел обыкновение читать вслух своему сынишке. 20. Они прекратили ссориться (quarrel), т.к. гости входили в зал.

### Exercise 140.

*Open the brackets paying attention to the use of the Past Perfect Tense.*

1. He already (go) by the time I (come) to the party. 2. Mother (cook) dinner before he (come). 3. When I (reach) the front door, I realized that I (lose) the key. 4. The shop (close) by the time I (get) there. 5. The scientists (carry) out many experiments before they (achieve) satisfactory results. 6. When I (arrive), he (stay) in the same hotel where we first (meet). 7. By the end of the year he (finish) research. 8. He told me that he (not see) much of her since she (move) to another town. 9. When I (come), he already (come) and (sit) near the fireplace looking through a magazine. 10. She said that they (meet) in 1990 for the first time.

### Exercise 141.

*Choose the right variant.*

1.1 \_\_\_ to the USA so far.

- a) have not been
- b) had not been

2 I never \_\_\_ them when I lived in London.

- a) had met
- b) have met

3.1 came at 2 o'clock. He \_\_\_ the work by that time.

- a) had done
- b) has done

4.1 met her on Monday and \_\_\_ her since.

- a) had not seen
- b) have not seen

5. She said in a voice she never \_\_\_ about it before.

- a) has heard
- b) had heard

6. Yes, I know Jim. I \_\_\_ him for more than ten years.

- a) have known
- b) had known

7. She tried to concentrate. She \_\_\_ John since 1978. No, he could not have done it.

- a) has known
- b) had known

8. He \_\_\_ in a bank before he came to our office.

- a) had worked
- b) has worked

9. We \_\_\_. there since we were young.

- a) have not been
- b) had not been

10. Why\_\_\_the window? It is very noisy in the street.

- a) had you opened
- b) have you opened

**Exercise 142.**

*Open the brackets and use the required past tense.*

1. It was the poorest room he ever (see). 2. No sooner she (come) at the station than a fast London train (arrive). 3» I (finish) my work by afternoon and (sit) quietly in my armchair, thinking of the days that (pass) by, 4. The storm already (die) away, but very far off the thunder still (mutter). 5. I already (go) into the bed and (fall asleep) when my mother (knock) at the door and (ask) me to get up. 6. By the time the guests (come), she still (not be ready). 7. I (not listen), so I missed what she (say). 8. By 9 o'clock he (finish) work. He (go) outside. The rain (stop) but it (be) rather cool. 9. By the time I (come) the shop already (close), 10. Hardly we (leave) when our bicycle (break) down.

**Exercise 143.**

*Complete the sentences with the verbs from the box using the Past Perfect Continuous Tense.*

consider	burn
drive	hope
quarrel	rain
practice	write
work	try

1. He\_\_\_the car for many hours before he came to the crossroads, 2. The pianist \_\_\_ the passage hour after hour till he mastered it, 3, When I met her, her eyes were red. She and Mike again\_\_\_\_. 4, When I came, they\_\_\_ this question for more than an hour. 5. It was evening and he was tired because he\_\_\_since dawn. 6. He \_\_\_ to get her on the phone for 15 minutes before he heard her voice. 7. By 12 o'clock they \_\_\_\_\_ a composition for two hours. 8. The fire\_\_\_for some time before a fire brigade came. 9. I\_\_\_to meet her for ages when I bumped into her by chance. 10. When I left home, it was raining, and as it\_\_\_since morning, the streets were muddy.

**Exercise 144.**

*Open the brackets and use the proper tense.*

1. When he (arrive), I (live) in London for a week. 2, We (read) while he (eat). 3. When Jack (phone) me, I (write) a letter, 4. When my friend (come), I (do) an exercise for an hour. 5. The library (close) by the time I (get) there. 6. I (drive) home when I (hear) the news on the radio. 7. They always (have) loud parties which (go on) till the early hours, 8. We (walk) for some hours before we (realize) that we (lose) our way. 9. No sooner I (complain) that I (not hear) from them for a long time than the letter (come). 10. The concert was a great success.

When the pianist (finish) his part, the audience (applaud) the orchestra for some minutes.

### Exercise 145.

*Translate into English.*

1. Мы посмотрели пьесу до того, как обсудили ее. 2. Мы посмотрели пьесу, а затем обсудили ее. 3. Я был в Лондоне в прошлом году. Раньше я там не бывал. 4. Ему не нравилось письмо, которое он пытался написать уже два часа. Слова казались ему неубедительными (unconvincing). 5. Когда мы пришли, он уже вернулся и что-то писал в своем кабинете (study). 6. Он окончил свою работу в саду и сидел на террасе (terrace). Вечер был теплый, и солнце только что зашло. 7. Она проработала с нами только два месяца, но доказала, что она опытный юрист (lawyer) . 8. Шел очень сильный снег, и я не смог разобрать (make out) номера трамвая. Когда я уже проехал (cover) несколько остановок (tram stops), я понял что ехал в неправильном направлении. 9. Я звонила вам с 4-х часов, но не смогла дозвониться (get): ваша линия была все время занята, 10. Две недели шли дожди: наконец три дня назад установилась (set in) хорошая погода.

### Exercise 146.

*Here is the forecast of the life in the 21<sup>st</sup> century. Complete the sentences with the words from the box.*

forbid	start
be	use
live	have
elect	work
take over	replace

1. People\_\_\_ on the moon. 2. Children\_\_\_school at the age of three. 3. Computers\_\_\_ teachers. 4 People \_\_\_ 4 hours a day. 5. Houses and factories\_\_\_ solar energy. 6. Americans\_\_\_a woman president. 7. Robots \_\_\_most jobs. 8. There will be a law, which\_\_\_having more than two children. 9. Six weeks\_\_\_a normal annual holiday. 10, Great Britain\_\_\_a black Prime Minister.

### Exercise 147.

*Fill in the blanks with shall or will.*

1. Tomorrow it \_\_\_\_\_ be cold and wet. 2. He\_\_\_ be fifty in June. 3. it's too dark to go. I\_\_\_call a taxi. 4. \_\_\_ I give you a lift? 5. \_ you help me with this bag? 6.1 \_\_\_\_, beat you if you do it again 7. \_\_\_\_\_ I close the window? 8.\_\_\_\_, you close the window? 9. There is a car pulling down. — Oh, that\_\_\_be John. 10.1 doubt if he \_\_\_come soon. 11.\_\_\_\_ we go on with our work? 12. Don't worry, I\_\_\_not be late. 13.1 suppose you\_\_\_\_\_ be pretty busy tomorrow.

### Exercise 148.

*Open the brackets and use either the Future Indefinite or the Present Continuous Tense.*

1. I've bought a typewriter, I (learn) to type. 2. No, I (not eat) meat any more. I am a vegetarian-. 3. What's I \_\_\_\_\_ wrong? — I've got a flat tyre. — No problem.

I (help) you. 4.1 (punish) you if you continue doing it. 5. The forecast says it (rain). 6. You (air) the room? — Certainly-7. Nick» my TV set is again out of order. — O.K. I (fix) it. 8. I suppose he (come). 9. He (help) you if you ask him. 10. What you (do) this evening? 11. He (be) busy tomorrow. He (sendee) his car. 12. Lucy (not go) anywhere this summer. Her son (go) to college. 13. Ann is very angry with him. I am afraid she (not stay) here another minute. 14.1 (give) you another piece of cake? — No, thanks, that (do). 15. You (help) me with this bag? 16.1 (send) the letter? 17.1 am afraid, it (be) difficult for you to stay there so long. 18. Where we (meet)? Victoria Station (be) all right? 19. In the 21st century people (fly) to Mars and other planets. 20.1 (go) to the country for the weekend. — I (go) with you, 21. You (turn down) the radio, please?

### **Exercise 149.**

*Open the brackets and put the Future or the Present Indefinite Tense.*

1.1 (accompany) you with pleasure as soon as I (finish) my report. 2. The performance (be) a great success if he (play) the leading role. 3. If this time (be) convenient for you, we (meet) tomorrow. 4. We (not complete) the work this week in case he (get) ill. 5. We (not start) till he (arrive). 6. Provided he (leave) now, he (miss) the rush hour. 7. We (not be able) to carry out the experiment unless he (help) us. 8. You may take my dictionary as long as you (give) it back on Friday. 9. As soon as he (return) from the beach, we (have) dinner. 10.1 (phone) you when she (come). 11. Providing that he (work) hard, he will finish his work on Thursday. 12. She has two keys in her bag in case she (lose) one. 13. Unless he (come), we (not go) to the country. 14. He (remind) you of your promise in case you (forget) it. 15. As soon as the lake (get frozen), she (go skating). 16. When you (turn) on the right, you (see) an old oak. 17. If she (keep) her promise, they (be) rich. 18. Unless you (look) at the picture at some distance, you (not see) the details. 19. Providing that nothing (happen), I (return) in two weeks. 20. If the wind (blow) from the west, it (rain). 21. If you (get) there before me, wait till I (come). 22. Provided all (go) well, I (graduate) in June. 23. He (not go) for a walk until he (do) his lessons. 24. He (not catch) the train unless he (leave) immediately. 25. We (not wait) till he (make up his mind).

### **Exercise 150.**

*Open the brackets and use the proper tense, either the Future or the Present Indefinite paying attention to when and if.*

1. Well go swimming if it (be) a nice day tomorrow. 2,1 wonder if it (rain) tomorrow. 3. You'll get wet if you (not take) an umbrella. 4.1 don't know when he (come back), 5.1 doubt if he (join) us. He is very busy. 6. She will serve the table when he (come). 7. I'll be grateful to you if you (lend) me this sum of money. 8.1 am not sure if he (follow) my advice. 9,1 wonder if I (solve) this problem without anybody's help. 10. He supposes that they will buy the house if it (be) in good condition, 11.1 am sure that when he (come) he will apologize for his rudeness. 12.1 wonder if you (invite) the Browns if they (be) here on Sunday? 13. It's hard to say if she (find out) everything. 14,1 don't know when

she (go) to see them. 15. We will discuss the terms of the contract when he (come), 16.1 will not deal with him if he (be) so stubborn!

### Exercise 151.

*Choose the right variant.*

1. He \_\_\_ here till he \_\_\_ everything.
  - a) will stay, doesn't do
  - b) will stay, does
  - c) stays?, will do
  - d) stays, will not do
2. In case the weather \_\_\_ good, they \_\_\_ fishing.
  - a) will be, will go
  - b) is, go
  - c) will be, go
  - d) is, will go
3. Unless he \_\_\_, we \_\_\_ to the theatre.
  - a) doesn't come, won't go
  - b) comes, won't go
  - c) won't come, don't go
  - d) doesn't come, don't go
- 4.1 can't decide if I \_\_\_ you till I \_\_\_ when they \_\_\_.
  - a) will join, will know, will leave
  - b) will join, know, will leave
  - c) join, will know, leave
  - d) join, will know, will leave
5. I \_\_\_ you the keys to the car as long as you \_\_\_ the speed.
  - a) will give, won't exceed
  - b) give, won't exceed
  - c) will give, don't exceed
  - d) give, don't exceed
- 6.1 don't know if they \_\_\_ new people. If they \_\_\_ I \_\_\_ you of it.
  - a) will hire, will, will inform
  - b) hire<sub>5</sub> do, inform
  - c) hiie, will, will inform
  - d) will hire, do, will inform.
- 7.1 \_\_\_ anywhere till my son \_\_\_ all his exams.
  - a) won't go, doesn't take
  - b) don't go doesn't take
  - c) won't go, takes
  - d) won't go, will take
8. If she \_\_\_ and we \_\_\_ at home, ask her when she \_\_\_ the magazine.
  - a) phones, are not, will bring
  - b) will phone, will not be, will bring
  - c) phones, will not be, brings
  - d) will phone, will not be, brings

9.1 \_\_\_ the article when I \_\_\_ home and \_\_\_ you **up** when it \_\_\_ ready.

- a) will translate, will come, will ring, will be
- b) will translate, come, will ring, is
- c) will translate, will come, ring, will be
- d) translate, will come, ring, is

10. He \_\_\_ me the book providing I \_\_\_ it not later than Saturday.

- a) will give, will return
- b) give, return
- c) will give, return
- d) give, will return

### **Exercise 152.**

*Translate into English.*

1. Они будут смотреть фильм, как только дети лягут спать. 2. Как только он придет, я ему все расскажу. 3. Я с ним поговорю до твоего приезда, но я не уверен, последует ли он моим советам. 4. Я буду вам очень благодарен (grateful), если вы продиктуете (dictate) мне эту статью. 5. С вашей стороны будет очень глупо, если вы не воспользуетесь данной возможностью. 6. Поезд прибывает через час. Если вы поедете на машине, вы встретите ее. 7. Как только вы его увидите, спросите его, когда он уезжает и зайдет ли он к нам перед отъездом. 8. Спросите их, не дадут ли они мне пылесос (vacuum cleaner), если мне нужно будет почистить ковер. 9. Вот вам мой адрес на тот случай, если вы решите приехать в Москву. 10. Мне отправить письмо? — Да. Когда вы пойдете домой, бросьте его в почтовый ящик (mailbox). 11. Я уверен, вы полюбите ее, как только она начнет работать с вами, 12. Мы детально (in detail) обсудим этот вопрос до того, как он придет. 13. Если он не получит книгу в воскресенье, он не сможет подготовиться к докладу. 14. Я с ним поговорю, когда он придет, но я не знаю, придет ли он сегодня. 15. Я не знаю, когда я получу от нее ответ, но как только я его получу, я сразу же вам позвоню.

### **Exercise 153.**

*Put the verbs into the Future Continuous Tense making all necessary changes.*

*Example: At 6 o'clock in the morning he always sleeps. — He will be sleeping at 6 o'clock in the morning tomorrow.*

1. It is 5 o'clock. She is having a music lesson. 2. He is working in the garden now. 3. It is eleven o'clock. Ben is lying on the beach. 4. It's 10 o'clock. Nick and Tom are playing tennis. 5. It's dinnertime. We're standing in the queue to enter the Canteen. 6. She is out. She always goes shopping during the break. 7. It's eight o'clock. He is speaking with his partner on the telephone. 8. Granny is cooking supper, 9. His little sister is eating porridge this morning. 10. It's no use inviting Tom for a walk. He is watching a football match.

### **Exercise 154.**

*Open the brackets and use either the Future Indefinite or the Future Continuous Tense.*



1. He has come home from school late today. So he can't go for a walk: he (do) his homework after dinner. 2. Today is Sunday and it does not rain. We (have) tea out in the garden. 3. The big stores (have) their summer sales soon. 4. The weather is warm today. We (have) a walk out in the garden. 5. I'm leaving now, but I suppose I (see) you in the evening. 6. There is a party at Betsy's house tonight. So I (meet) you in the evening. 7. It's awful to think I (work) this time next week. 8. Wait a little, I (phone) for a taxi. 9. I'm very tired. I think I (go) to bed earlier today.

10 We (play) chess in half an hour, 11 When you come, he still (work) at his report 12. Tomorrow at this time we (go) to Scotland. 13, Can you imagine that in five days we (cross) the Atlantic on our way home, 14. What you (do) if I come at five? — I (watch) TV. 15, If they arrive at 7, I still (sleep). I usually get up at 8.

### Exercise 155.

*Join the following sentences with if, when, after, while, etc,*

Example: I'll go for a holiday. I'll not be busy, — *I'll go for a holiday when I am not busy.*

1. He'll be back early in August. His holiday will finish. 2. He'll have a good time. The sea will be warm. 3. I'll be quite free. I'll graduate from college» 4. He will come to my birthday party. He will not forget. 5. The German students will be having their oral test. The English students will be writing their examination paper. 6. He will not go for a walk. He will not have breakfast.

7. You will be packing our things. I'll be making arrangements on the phone. 8. We'll come at 2 o'clock. They will be preparing for the test. 9, You'll phone at 3, I'll be having a long-distance call and the line will be engaged» 10. They'll see the sights, They'll go home.

### Exercise 156.

*Translate into English.*

1 Если погода будет хорошей, завтра в это время вы будете пересекать Ла-Манш. 2,, Не звоните мне от 3-х до 5-ти. Я буду работать. 3. Девочки сейчас будут играть в волейбол? а мальчики — в футбол, 4. Когда ты придешь к нему 9 он будет красить потолок (ceiling). Он ремонтирует (refurnish) квартиру. 5 Боюсь, я буду занят в это время. Мы будем встречать японскую делегацию 6о Когда мы придем домой, мама все еще будет готовить обед. 7. Неужели я завтра буду лететь на самолете в Америку? 8 Боюсь, когда вы придете, сын будет уходить» 9 Мы завтра будем обедать в три, а не в два, 10. Ваш малыш еще будет спать, если я приду в три?

### Exercise 157.

*Complete the sentences with the verbs from the box in the Future Perfect Tense.*

go                    tidy up  
pack                learn

type            buy  
paint         receive  
cook            see

1 She \_ an urgent paper for the conference. 2, Bob \_\_\_ his room by his mother coming. 3 He already \_\_\_\_\_ a portrait for the exhibition. 4, Peter \_ dinner by the time his wife comes. 5. She \_\_\_ a wedding dress by the time her wedding takes place, 6, They \_\_\_ by the time we come here. 7. T \_ s. letter by the end of 'the week.' 8. The train is to leave at nine o'clock. They \_\_\_ their suitcase by that time. 9. I \_ the film by 9 o'clock. 10. She \_ the new words for the spelling test, which her teacher is going to give tomorrow.

### Exercise 158.

*Open the brackets and put the verbs into the Future Indefinite, the Future Perfect, the Present Indefinite or the Present Perfect Tense.*

1. By 8 o'clock they (have) dinner. 2. By the end of the week he (finish) the translation. 3, Before you (come) I (do) all the work. 4, She (look) through the article by 12 o'clock. 5. They (receive) our letter by Monday. 6. By the time we (get) to the forest the rain (stop), 7. I think he (answer) the letter by this time. 8. We (begin) to work after we (read) all the instructions, 9, We (not do) anything until he (take) necessary steps. 10. The committee (prepare) the plan by tomorrow. 11. I suppose when my letter (reach) you I already (return) from your voyage, 12. He (pass) an exam after he (learn) all the material. 13. I am afraid they (not discuss) all the questions by the time they (come). 14. We (not be able) to start the experiment before we (obtain) the necessary data. 15. The secretary already (look) through all the papers before the boss (come). 16. My train (leave) by the time you (come) to the station.

### Exercise 159.

*Translate into English.*

1. Боюсь, к тому времени, когда вы придете с деньгами, они уже все распродадут. 2. Позвоните мне после того, как вы прочитаете книгу. 3. Мы сделаем все упражнения к его приходу, а затем все вместе поедem на каток (skating rink). 4. Я напишу ему после того, как увижусь с его родителями. 5. Наш завод выпустит (produce) новый автомобиль к концу года. б. Не знаю, напишет ли он статью к первому сентября. Если она будет готова к этому времени, мы ее напечатаем. 7. Я уже уйду в театр, если вы придете так поздно. 8. Боюсь, вы опоздаете. Они уже закончат переговоры (talks) к 5 часам. 9. К сожалению, вы его не застанете. К этому времени он уже уедет на вокзал. 10. К воскресенью они закончат ремонт (repairs) и переедут на новую квартиру.

### Exercise 160.

*Open the brackets and use the Future Perfect Continuous Tense.*

1. They already (rehearse) for an hour when we come. 2. I (work) in this company for 10 years next April. 3. By next year he (writing) the novel for three years. 4. The thieves are sure that they (drive) for 6 hours when the police

discover the robbery in the morning. 5. They (study) for 3 hours when you come.

### **Exercise 161.**

*if any (pay attention to the use of tenses).*

1. After graduating from the institute I came to St. Petersburg. I am working here since then. 2. I have just left the house when you phoned me. 3. By the time I came to the country cottage my friends have already left. 4. When I came, my friend was sitting on the sofa and was reading a newspaper. 5. It has rained since morning and I am afraid, it won't stop by Saturday. 6. He will work at his new book during his holiday. 7. The woman who speaks with my sister is my neighbour who is living opposite us. 8. They were looking for the money since morning but they couldn't find it anywhere. 9. Yesterday when I came to see my friend he was having supper. He has just come home. 10. After he has finished the picture he will invite his friends to look at it.

### **Exercise 162.**

*Choose the right variant.*

1. When, Ann last?

I \_\_\_ her since she \_\_\_ to another city.

- a) have you seen, haven't seen, has moved
- b) did you see, didn't see, moved
- c) did you see, haven't seen, moved
- d) have you seen, didn't see, has moved

2. Our train \_\_\_ at 8 o'clock. If you \_\_\_ at 5, we. our things.

- a) leaves, come, will pack
- b) will leave, will come, will be packing
- c) is leaving, will come, are packing
- d) leaves, come, will be packing

3. They \_\_\_. to build a new McDonalds in several days and \_\_\_ it by the end of the year.

- a) will start, will finish
- b) are starting, will have finished
- c) start, will be finishing
- d) start, are finishing

4. I \_\_\_ the performance for twenty minutes when my friend \_\_\_ at last. His car \_\_\_ on his way to the theatre.

- a) was watching, had come, had broken down
- b) had been watching, came, had broken down
- c) watched, came, broke down
- d) have been watching, had come, has broken

5. Look, what he \_\_\_ on the blackboard. He \_\_\_ three mistakes.

- a) is writing, has made
- b) has written, had made
- c) has been writing, is making
- d) writes, made

6. What \_\_\_ if the rain „\_\_\_ by evening? It \_\_\_ since yesterday, I wonder when it\_\_\_.

- a) will we do, doesn't stop, is pouring, will stop
- b) are we doing, hasn't stopped, had been pouring, stops
- c) shall we have done, won't have stopped, was pouring, will be stopping
- d) shall we do, hasn't stopped, has been pouring, will stop

7. What\_\_\_when I\_\_\_? - We.\_\_\_the article which Mary\_\_\_just \_..... I\_\_\_to read it for a long time.

- a) did you do, was coming in, were reading, has brought, have wanted
- b) were you doing, came in, were reading, had brought, had wanted
- c) had you been doing, came in, read, brought, had been wanting
- d) have you done, have come in, have read, has brought, wanted

8. It\_\_\_dark, it's time for the children to go home. They\_\_\_in the yard for the whole evening.

- a) got, play
- b) has got, are playing
- c) is getting, have been playing
- d) gets, played

9. I haven't heard you come into the room. When\_\_\_? — I \_\_\_ long ago. You\_\_\_and I\_\_\_to disturb you.

- a) did you come, came, were reading, was not wanting
- b) did you come, came, were reading, did not want
- c) have you come, have come, have been reading, don't want
- d) were you coming, was coming, read, haven't wanted

10. I\_\_\_ till Father\_\_\_. He\_\_\_his key and I will have to wait for him.

- a) won't be leaving, will come, had lost
- b) won't leave, will come, has lost
- c) won't leave, comes, has lost
- d) aren't leaving, comes, loses

### **Exercise 163.**

*Translate into English (revision).*

1. Он стоял у окна и думал о своем будущем» 2. Я видел его давно. Я видел его недавно. Я не видел его давно. 3. Это произошло до того, как мы туда приехали. 4. Они сделали все возможное (do one's best) до того, как пришел врач. 5. Я надеюсь, тебе будет все ясно, когда ты получишь письмо. 6. К 9 часам он закончил работу и вышел на улицу. Ветер утих (fall), но было довольно прохладно. Он медленно шел, стараясь ни о чем не думать. 7. Я не видел тебя целую вечность. Как дела, какие новости? 8. Вы ошиблись. Вы передаете мне соль, а не горчицу (mustard). 9. Мы остановились, так как какой-то человек подходил к нам, 10. Я пришел, чтобы попрощаться с вами. Завтра в это время я буду плыть (sail) к острову Пасхи (Easter), 11. Куда ты положил ключ? Я нигде не могу его найти. 12. Он не видел меня, так как что-то писал. 13. Наконец я сделал свою домашнюю работу и теперь свободен. 14. Кто-то стоит у нашей двери. Мне кажется, он

подслушивает (overhear). 15. Если она не получит никаких известий от брата на этой неделе, она пошлет телеграмму. 16. К тому времени, когда мы добрались до дома, снег прекратился, а луна ярко сияла на темном небе. Мы устали, т. к. шли три часа. 17. Ты когда-нибудь слышал, как хорошо она говорит по-английски? Говорят (they say), она учит его уже три года. 18. Что ты будешь делать завтра в три часа? Если ты будешь свободен, мы придем к тебе.

### The Passive Voice

#### Exercise 164.

*Match the beginning of the sentence on the left with its ending on the right.*

1) The experiment	a) been held recently?
2) The mail	b) was erected three hundred years ago.
3) These machines	c) was being looked for everywhere.
4) When can the new equipment	d) will be described in several journals.
5) It's a pity the concert	e) are made and contracts are signed in this office.
6) Are the orders	f) is being designed by several well-known architects.
7) If we use the old methods, a lot of time	g) were built with very simple tools many years ago.
8) Something important	h) was not recorded,
9) No decisions	i) are going to be tested again.
10) This monument	j) have been taken yet.
11) Offers	k) was being discussed, so I sat down to listen.
12) Have any interesting exhibitions or fairs	l) may be wasted and very little be achieved,
13) All these little wooden houses	m) always fulfilled in time?
14) The future church	n) usually brought at 9 a.m.
15) The lost dog	o) be installed?

#### Exercise 165,

*Change the following sentences into the Passive Voice.*

*A using the Indefinite Tenses (give two forms where possible).*

*Example: Tom gave her a book. — She was given a book. The book was given to her.*

1. He broke my watch. 2. The teacher explained the rule to the students. 3. He often asks me to help them. 4. They usually do written exercises in class. 5. She will make a new discovery soon. 6. Steve will make a report at the conference. 7» They play tennis all year round, 8. His friends never forgave his betrayal, 9, The manager offers me several jobs. 10. They will promise you much, but don't imagine they will give you everything. 11. His parents regularly sent him parcels

with fruit from their garden. 12. They will give me a leave in JoJy if there is no urgent work. 13. The Spanish government offered Columbus three ships, 14. They usually send their children to camp for summer. 15. The officer charged him with a very important mission, 16, I'm sure we'll settle the matter easily. 17. The policeman fined the driver for exceeding the speed limit 18. Somebody calls her every day. 19. We request the passengers leaving for London to register. 20. The manager will sign contracts tomorrow.

**B** using the Indefinite Tenses (pay attention to prepositions),

Example: She looks after him well. — He is well looked after (by her).

1. We sent for the police. 2, They speak much about this book. 3. They often laugh at him. 4. They listened to our conversation very attentively. 5. I think they will wait for us only in a week. 6. Nobody took notice of his late arrival. 7. We looked through all the advertisements very attentively. 8, He was a brilliant speaker, and whenever he spoke, the audience listened to him with great attention, 9. They will look after him in hospital much better. 10. Everybody looked at her new dress with interest. 11. She sent them for a taxi. 12. People will talk much about the successful performance of the young actress. 13, They always make fun of him. 14. The teacher pointed out gross mistakes in the translation. 15. He referred to very interesting plans. 16. They agreed upon Monday as the most suitable day. 17. He did not touch upon this question unfortunately. 18. They spoke to him about his promotion yesterday.

**C** using the Continuous Tenses.

Example: They are solving a difficult problem now. — The problem is being solved now.

1. Don't come in! The professor is examining students. 2. Can I read the article? — No, the secretary is typing it. 3. We had to hurry. They were waiting for us. 4. It was noisy. Nobody was listening to him. 5. Does he realize that they are laughing at him? 6, Look at this man. I think he is following us. 7. Listen carefully! He is giving a very interesting talk. 8, The waiter is serving us rather fast, 9. The secretary was looking through morning mail. 10. The interpreter is translating their conversation rather well. 11. The briefing is in full swing. The correspondents are interviewing the participants of the conference. 12, The company was developing a new project. 13. You can't watch the film now. The mechanic is fixing the TV set.

**D** using the Perfect Tenses

Example: They have already brought the medicine. — The medicine has already been brought.

1. You have repaired our house lately. 2. When the fire brigade came, the fire had destroyed the building. 3. The athlete has shown much better results since this coach trains him, 4. I will have answered all the business letters by noon. 5. The president of the board has signed the document. 6. Is she washing the floor? — No, she has already washed it. 7, By his arrival they had repaired his car. 8. He has booked the tickets and the clerk will have brought them by 2 o'clock. 9.

They had painted the house by his arrival. 10. The police haven't found the reason for the accident yet. 11. Have you touched anything here? 12. The sociologist has interviewed a lot of students.

13. Have they tested all the machines? 14. The flood has caused considerable damage, 15. John will have received the papers by tomorrow.

*E using modal verbs.*

*Example: He can do this work. — The work can be done (by him).*

1. She can find a job easily. 2. The matter is urgent. They should phone her immediately. 3. The boss wants Mr. Black. You must find him. 4. I can make an interesting offer to you. 5. He's get a *pay* rise and LOW they can buy a new house. 6. You must send the document as quickly as possible. 7. The weather is warm. She may plant the flowers. 8. The document is of great importance. He must show it to us. 9. He must give back the book on Sunday. 10. Their kitchen is large and they can use it as a dining room. 11. Ecologists say that we should take care of our planet", 12. You must send for the doctor immediately. 13. The lecture is over. You may ask questions. 14. You should avoid the center of town during<sup>1</sup> rush hours. 15. They agreed that the club should raise membership fee.

### **Exercise 166.**

*Choose the correct grammar form to translate a predicate.*

1. Этот дом был построен в прошлом году.

- a) was being built
- b) has been built
- c) was built

2. Сейчас здесь строится новый супермаркет.

- a) is being built
- b) is building
- c) is built

3. На этой неделе преподаватель объяснил (преподавателем был объяснен) новый материал.

- a) had been explained
- b) was explained
- c) has been explained

4. Новое здание института уже построили, когда я поступила на юридический факультет.

- a) was built
- b) has been built
- c) had been built

5. Студентов экзаменуют два раза в год.

- a) are being examined
- b) is examined
- c) are examined

6. «Вы были невнимательны, когда объяснялось это правило», — сказал преподаватель.

- a) was explained

- b) had been explained
  - c) was being explained
7. Цветы уже политы.
- a) are watered
  - b) have been watered
  - c) were watered
8. Такие столы делают из дорогого дерева.
- a) are being made
  - b) have been made
  - c) are made
9. Этот фильм никогда не показывали по телевизору,
- a) has never been shown
  - b) was never shown
  - c) had never been shown
10. Мою квартиру отремонтируют к субботе,
- a) will be repaired
  - b) will have been repaired
  - c) is being repaired
11. Списки все еще печатаются.
- a) are typed
  - b) are being typed
  - c) have been typed
12. Их еще не пригласили,
- a) were not invited
  - b) had not been invited
  - c) have not been invited
13. Вам сообщат об этом завтра.
- a) will be informed
  - b) will have been informed
  - c) are informed
14. Когда я вошел, обсуждение было прервано.
- a) had been interrupted
  - b) was interrupted
  - c) has been interrupted
15. Земля была покрыта снегом.
- a) was being covered
  - b) was covered
  - c) had been covered

**Exercise 167.**

*Open the brackets and use the verb in the appropriate form of the Passive Voice,*

1. The first draft resolution (not discuss) yesterday; it (withdraw) long before the beginning of the meeting. 2. He is not in town; he (send) on a special mission, 3. Don't come into the compartment; the berth (fix) now. 4. A new underground line (construct) now. They say one of its stations (build) in my street. 5. He



wants to know when the final decision (take). The activities of the committee and their delays already much (speak) about. 6. It was three o'clock. We (tell) to hurry up because we (wait). 7. Do you believe that such a problem can (solve)? 8. It must (do) without delays. 9. On September 9, 1850, California (admit) to the Union as the thirty-first state. 10. Don't speak in a loud voice: we (listen). 11. The plan (approve)? — No, it (discuss) now. — How long it (discuss)? 12. By the time he arrives everything (settle). 13. Not all the necessary things (buy) for our trip that's why the departure (postpone). 14. The money (lend) to him two months ago, but it (not give) back yet. 15. The business day was in high gear: the mail (look) through, documents (type), letters (answer), talks (hold). 16. Wait a minute. The table (lay). 17. Dynamite (invent) by Alfred Bernhard Nobel. 18. This exercise may (write) with a pencil. 19. This work (do) before you went to Moscow? 20. If you (ask) about it, will you be able to answer?

### **Exercise 168.**

*Find and correct the mistakes if any,*

1. Don't bring the article today. It will be being typed only tomorrow. 2. The South Pole was discovered by Amundsen in 1912, 3. The book which was written last month is discussing a lot. It has been written a lot of articles about. 4. When I came, an experiment was been holding in the lab. 5. Do you know that this house was belonged to Mr. Brown? 6. What new buildings have been built in your town since I was there? 7. The building was collapsed during the earthquake. 8. Have you seen him? Has he been changed much? 9. Do you know that you are following? 10. I hope this journal can find at the library.

### **Exercise 169.**

*Translate into English using the Passive Voice.*

1. К сожалению, на конференции такие вопросы не затрагивались (touch upon). 2. Кто вам сказал, что соглашение (agreement) подписано? 3. Здесь говорят только на английском. 4. Ей разрешили заниматься спортом. 5. Посетителей принимают каждый день. 6. Бетти не разрешают приходить сюда. 7. В больнице за ним ухаживали плохо. 8. За ним уже послано? — Да, ему позвонили и велели придти в восемь. 9. На нашей улице строят новый кинотеатр. 10. Не говори это, а то (otherwise) над тобой будут смеяться. 11. Мне еще ничего об этом не говорили. 12. Мы поедем завтра за город, если будет дождь? — Да, мы должны туда поехать, нас там будут ждать. 13. Это здание было только что построено, когда мы приехали сюда. 14. К вечеру работа была закончена. 15. Когда мы вернулись, на рассказали много интересных новостей.

### **Sequence of Tenses**

#### **Exercise 170**

*Change the following into indirect speech,*

1. "I have something to tell you," I said to her. 2. "I met her for the first time on a warm sunny morning last spring," he said. 3. "I am going to call again tomorrow, mother," she said. 4. "I've been to Turkey twice, but so far I haven't

had time to visit Istanbul," said Robert. 5. "It will be very difficult to persuade her to take care of herself, doctor," I replied. 6. "The president is to come to Madrid the day after tomorrow," said the BBC announcer. 7. "We have a lift but very often it doesn't work," they said. 8. "We have bought a new flat. But we don't like it so much as our last one," said my cousin. 9. "I have left a message for him, but he hasn't phoned yet," she said. 10. "I've no idea who has done it but I'll find out," said Peggy. 11. He said, "My mother has just been operated on," 12. "I'll come with you as soon as Fin ready," she replied to me. 13. "I have a French lesson this evening and I haven't done my homework yet," said the small boy. 14. "She has been sitting\* in the garden since the police came," I said to the officer. 15. "You haven't closed the window and has forgotten to turn off the light," he pointed out,

### **Exercise 171,**

*Change the following general questions into indirect speech. Begin your sentences with the words I/he wondered, we/they asked, she/he wanted to know, etc.*

*Example: Did she go shopping? — 4c asked if/ whether she had gone shopping,*

1. Are your children still skiing? 2. Have they had breakfast yet? 3. Is Mike still taking an exam? 4. Did she take part in the performance? 5. Had they already left by the time you went to the station? 6. Do they regularly go to the swimming pool? 7. Will she buy a new Hoover? 8. Will she be training at 10 tomorrow? 9. Does he usually go to the Caribbeans for his holiday? 10. Did she learn to play the guitar? 11. Has the decision been already taken? 12. Do you know when the results will be out? 13. Does he know your new address? 14. Have you known each other for a long time? 15. Did he begin smoking a pipe?

### **Exercise 172.**

*Change the following special questions into indirect speech. Begin your sentences with the words I/he wondered, we/they asked, she/he wanted to know, etc.*

*Example: When did she go shopping? — He asked when she had gone shopping.*

1. Why did he decide to go to Ethiopia? 2. When was she sent on business? 3. Who will fulfil this task? 4. How long has she been staying here? 5. Who was he speaking to when I came tip to him? 6. Who will play the role of Hamlet? 7» What is shown in this diagram? 8. What is he going to do on Sunday? 9., How long have they been developing this project? 10. Who was this book written by?

### **Exercise 173,**

*Imagine that you have come to study to a foreign country and students are asking you questions. Report these questions later to your friend.*

*Example: "What country do you come from?" asked Bill. — Bill asked what country I came from.*

*"Do you often go to the swimming-pool?" asked Pete. — Pete asked if I often went to the swimming-pool.*

1. "How long have you been here?" said Ann. 2. "Are you working as well as studying?" asked Peter. 3. "Have you got a work permit?" Bill wanted to know.

4. "What are you going to study?" asked Ann. 5. "Have you enrolled for more than one class?" said Peter. 6. "Do you want to buy any second-hand books?" said Bill. 7. "Have you seen the library?" asked Ann. 8. "Do you play rugby?" said Peter. 9. "Will you have time to play regularly?" he went on. 10. "Did you play for your school team?" asked Bill. 11. "Are you interested in acting?" asked Ann. 12. "Would you like to join our drama group?" she asked. 13. "What do you think of our canteen?" asked Pete.

#### **Exercise 174.**

*Change commands, requests, recommendations into indirect speech.*

*Example: "Close the door," she asked me. — She asked me to close the door.*

1. "Open the safe!" the raiders ordered the bank clerk. 2. "Please do as I say," he begged me. 3. "Help your mother, Peter," Mr. Pitt said. 4. "Don't make too much noise, children," he said. 5. "Do whatever you like," she said to us. 6. "Don't miss your train," she warned them. 7. "Read the document before you sign it," the lawyer said to his client. 8. "Fill in the blank again," he said. 9. "Buy a new car," I advised him. 10. "Don't drive too fast," she begged him. 11. "Don't put your bicycle near my window," said the shopkeeper to me. 12. "Come to the cinema with me," he asked her. 13. "Cook it in butter," I advised her. 14. "Send for the fire brigade," the manager said to the porter. 15. "Please pay at the desk," said the shop assistant to her. 16. "Don't argue with me," said the teacher to the boy. 17. "Pull as hard as you can," he said to her. 18. "Don't lend anything to her," he advised us. 19. "Stand clear off the door," a voice warned the people. 20. "Put down that gun. It's loaded," she warned him.

#### **Exercise 175.**

*Change sentences with modal verbs and their equivalents into indirect speech.*

1. "If what you have said is true I must go to the police," he said. 2. "You don't need to come in tomorrow," said my employer. "You may take a day off." 3. "I'll be busy next week and won't be able to help you," she said to us. "Besides this text must be typed and as for me, I cannot type, so I'll have to ask somebody to do it," she added. 4. The official said, "This passport photo isn't like you at all. You must have another one taken." 5. "I needn't get up till nine tomorrow," I said. 6. "I must go to the dentist tomorrow," she said to me. "I have an appointment." 7. "I will go to bed. I had to get up very early today," he said. 8. "I couldn't meet her, I was working," he said. 9. "Ann's English is very poor. She must study very hard," the teacher said. 10. "Something was wrong with the receiver, I could not hear you well yesterday," she said.

#### **Exercise 176.**

*Translate into English paying attention to the sequence of tenses.*

1. Я знал, что она еще не прочитала письмо. 2. Она считала, что ананасы растут на деревьях. 3. Он сказал нам, что расплатился с долгами (pay one's debts) больше месяца назад. 4. Она сказала, что пишет это сочинение (composition) уже три часа. 5. Она не знала, успешно ли закончилась (be a success) операция. 6. Том позвонил в полицию и сказал, что все его вещи украдены. 7. Капитан приказал всем подняться на борт (get aboard). 8. Они

не знали, будут ли опубликованы результаты их исследований. 9. Я думал, что он работает, и не вошел в комнату. 10. Он попросил, чтобы она не беспокоилась. 11. Я не знаю, когда он приедет в Москву. 12. Они поинтересовались, бывал ли я когда-нибудь за границей (abroad). 13. Он сказал им, что они не должны говорить об этом сейчас. 14. Наш гид (guide) рассказал нам, что замок (castle) был возведен в 14-ом веке. 15. Я надеюсь, что новый мост будет построен в следующем году.

### **Exercise 177.**

*Change the following into indirect speech paying attention to conditional sentences.*

1. "I'll put a book into your briefcase in case you want to read," Mother said. 2. He said, "If she follows my advice, all will turn out well." 3. "Annette will have come to Paris in an hour if there are no delays," Pete thought. 4. "These letters must be sent immediately as soon as they are translated," the manager said. 5. "I'll take you out for a walk after I have seen the film," he said to his dog. 6. "I am sure she will sing to us provided we ask her," he whispered. 7. "If she trains hard she will win the Cup," the trainer said. 8. "If she stays in bed for a couple of days, she will be all right in a week," the doctor said to the mother. 9. "If the train comes on time we'll be able to see the football match," he said to me. 10. She said, "I won't come if I am not invited."

### **Exercise 178.**

*Translate into English paying attention to the sequence of tenses in the clauses of time and condition.*

1. Я знал, что когда они вернутся, они обязательно позвонят нам. 2. Он сказал мне, что они не поедут туда, пока не узнают адреса. 3. Она сказала, что встретила приятеля, с которым училась в школе. 4. Она сказала мне, что вряд ли узнает район, так как он сильно изменился. 5. Он спросил, что я буду делать, когда выйду на пенсию (retire). 6. Он сказал, что как только документы будут получены, их пришлют нам. 7. Медсестра (nurse) сказала, что мы сможем поговорить с врачом только после того, как он осмотрит больного (examine a patient). 8. Он спросил меня, есть ли какая-нибудь надежда, что я изменюсь. 9. Корреспондентам сообщили, что проблема цен еще обсуждается и что, как только она будет решена, контракт будет подписан. 10. Он сказал, что прошло пять лет тех пор, как они женаты. 11. Он напомнил (remind) мне, что когда мы были студентами, мы всегда помогали друг другу. 12. Профессор сказал, чтобы я не приходил, пока не выучу весь материал.

## **Test 4**

Choose the right variant.

1. He \_\_\_ for some time before a servant \_\_\_ and \_\_\_ what he \_\_\_.
- a) knocked, opened, asked, wanted
  - b) was knocking, opened, asked, was wanting
  - c) had been knocking, opened, asked, wanted

- d) had knocked, had opened, had asked, had wanted
2. The doctor \_\_\_ there \_\_\_ nothing to worry about if the fever \_\_\_ above 38,5°.
- a) said, was, would not go  
 b) tells, is, will go  
 c) says, had been, went  
 d) said, was, did not go
3. I \_\_\_ a wash and a brush-up before starting to go to the luncheon Tom \_\_\_ me to, when they \_\_\_ me from the desk to say that he \_\_\_ below.
- a) had, was invited, were ringing, had been  
 b) was having, invited, had rung, was  
 c) was having, had invited, rang, was  
 d) had been having, had invited, had rung, had been
4. While we \_\_\_ at \_\_\_ lunch, a letter \_\_\_ to me from my sister.
- a) were, \_\_\_, was delivered  
 b) had been, a, was being delivered •  
 c) were, the, had been delivered  
 d) have been, \_\_\_, has been delivered
5. Some day I \_\_\_ to Paris to revisit all the places where I \_\_\_ in the time of my youth. I \_\_\_ them for a quarter of a century or so.
- a) will have gone, have lived, haven't seen  
 b) am going, had lived, did not see  
 c) will go, lived, haven't seen  
 d) will be going, had lived, hadn't seen
6. Hardly \_\_\_ asleep \_\_\_ an alarm clock \_\_\_.
- a) have I gone, than, will ring  
 b) had I gone, when, rang  
 c) I had gone, then, had rung  
 d) was I going, as, was ringing.
7. We \_\_\_ continue our research unless he \_\_\_ us.
- a) can't, won't help  
 b) will not be able to, does not help  
 c) can, will help  
 d) won't be able to, helps
8. We \_\_\_ him in many moods, but none of us \_\_\_ him to do a cruel thing.
- a) see, ever know  
 b) see, don't ever know  
 c) have seen, have ever known  
 d) have seen, haven't ever known
9. He needed to feel that he \_\_\_, that he \_\_\_ here, and that his word \_\_\_.
- a) was being listened to, was commanding, was always obeyed  
 b) is being listened to, is commanding, is always obeyed  
 c) was listened to, was being commanding, was always being obeyed  
 d) is listened to, is being commanding, was always being obeyed

10. Look! What \_\_\_ beautiful view! The sun \_\_\_ yet, but the grey sky \_\_\_ near the horizon.
- \_\_\_, was not appeared, is parted
  - \_\_\_, did not appear, parted
  - the, has not been appeared, has parted
  - a, has not appeared, is parted
11. When he saw that someone \_\_\_ at him, he did not immediately realize who this someone \_\_\_.
- looked, is
  - was looking, was
  - has been looking, is
  - had looked, was being
12. While our coffee \_\_\_, I \_\_\_ him our sad story which impressed him \_\_\_.
- was making, told, greatly
  - was being made, said, great
  - had been made, told, great
  - was being made, told, greatly
13. It \_\_\_ in the night, but now there \_\_\_ sunshine.
- has rained, was
  - had rained, had been
  - is raining, is being
  - has been raining, is
14. As he \_\_\_ the room that morning, Ann \_\_\_ up the letter which she \_\_\_.
- was entered, was holding, had just received
  - was entering, has held, has just received
  - entered, was holding, had just received
  - had entered, held, has just received
15. I \_\_\_ a note with the address of the hotel and the boy's name into his pocket \_\_\_ he \_\_\_ his way.
- have put, provided, will lose
  - will put, providing, will have lost
  - have put, in case, loses
  - will have put, when, have lost
16. They \_\_\_, but as they \_\_\_ me there \_\_\_ a hush.
- were talking, saw, was
  - are talking, have seen, had been
  - had been talking, will see, would be
  - have been talking, had seen, will be
17. Come on, if the sun \_\_\_ before we \_\_\_ home, we \_\_\_ our way.
- has set, reach, will lose
  - will have set, will reach, lose
  - will have set, reach, will lose
  - has been set, will reach, lose
18. \_\_\_ when he \_\_\_ her for the first time.

- a) Tell me, has met    c) Say to me, met  
 b) Say me, had met    d) Tell me, met
19. He was tired and by the time I \_\_\_\_, he \_\_\_\_ asleep.  
 a) have come, has fallen  
 b) came, fell  
 c) came, had fallen  
 d) had come, had fallen
20. The great majority of students \_\_\_\_ present at the conference. \_\_\_\_ great number of them \_\_\_\_ to listen to your lecture and each of them \_\_\_\_ ready to answer your questions.  
 a) are, A, want, is    c) is, A, wants, are  
 b) are, The, want, is    d) is, The, wants, has been

## The Infinitive

### Exercise 179.

*Match two parts of the sentences.*

- 1) She goes swimming    a) Why not go to the country?  
 2) They have to stay in.    b) to shout at Ann? They can't afford  
 3) Are you fit enough    c) to have a holiday.  
 4) To spend too much    d) to ask for help, money  
 5) To err is human,    e) to post it?  
 6) Don't hesitate to phone    f) to see how she is. me  
 7) The weather is fine,    g) to try and keep her weight down.  
 8) The letter is urgent,    h) if you need help. Could you remind me  
 9) I am sure, she is OK.    i) would be foolish. We could telephone  
 10) Who allowed you    j) to take part in the competition?  
 11) She is too proud    k) to forgive divine.  
 12) Ann is tired. She is    l) to go out very much, eager

### Exercise 180.

*Open the brackets and choose the Infinitive in the Active or Passive Voice.*

1. They are glad (invite/be invited) to the party. 2. I don't like (interrupt/be interrupted). 3. He will be happy (see/be seen) you. 4. I was glad (meet/be met) at the station. 5. Children like (tell/be told) tales and always (listen/be listened) to them with interest. 6. I did not think (interrupt/be interrupted) you. 7. He is glad (send/be sent) abroad. 8. He likes (ask/be asked) his professor questions, 9. He does not like (ask/be asked) questions because he does not know how to answer them. 10. Be careful with him. He is a very resentful person. He can't bear (joke/be joked at). 11. He does not like (laugh/be laughed) at other people. 12. Look, a ship can (see/be seen) in the distance. Can you (see/be seen) it?

### Exercise 181.

*Change the sentences according to the examples.*

**A**

*Example: It is simple to solve this problem. — This problem is simple to solve.*

*It is difficult to speak to such people. — Such people are difficult to speak to.*

1. It is expensive to buy a mink coat. 2. It is impossible to get a good dinner in our canteen. 3. It was difficult to start an engine in such cold weather. 4. It is dangerous to stand on this ladder. 5. It is rather difficult to deal with stubborn people. 6. It is dangerous to drive a car in big cities. 7. It is interesting to meet new people. 8. It is simple to communicate with people due to Internet. 9. It was unpleasant to watch their quarrel. 10. It is always funny to listen to him.

**B**

*Example: He came to the party the last. — He was the last to come to the party.*

1. He is the only one among us who gave up smoking. 2. I was the next who spoke on the topic. 3. He was the first who raised this question. 4. She was the second who got an excellent mark. 5. Paul was the last who greeted me. 6. She was the first who was fired. 7. He was the only one who jumped with a parachute. 8. I am the next who will be interviewed. 9. He was the only one who could speak Japanese. 10. I was the first who noticed the mistake. 11. His horse came in the race the last. 12. She was the first among us who recognized them.

**C**

*Example: It was the best time when she could find them at home. — It was the best time for her to find them at home.*

1. Here is a simple English book that you can read. 2. The first thing they must do when they arrive is to phone home. 3. This is a problem you should solve by yourself. 4. There is nothing that we can add. 5. These are children you can play with. 6. It is not a question you may laugh at. 7. There is nothing that we can do now. 8. These are nice flowers you can buy. 9. It was a little town where they could live a quiet life. 10. It is quite natural that they will get married.

**Exercise 182.**

*Make up new sentences beginning with It was. Use one of the adjectives from the box. The first is done for you.*

*nice                      mean*

*unfair                  kind*

*sensible                silly*

*careless*

*Example: Mary invited us to the party. — It was nice of Mary to invite us to the party. 147*

1. He bought a car but he can't drive. 2. She betrayed all her friends. Nobody wants to speak to her. 3. They helped with the work. 4. The manager cut down his salary, though he is the best worker in the team. 5. He sold his house when it cost \$45,000. Now such a house costs \$40,000. 6. You made a serious mistake when you trusted her.

**Exercise 183.**



Complete the sentences with *what /how/ where/whether* and the verbs from the box.

get act go accept phone switch on go take buy do use
---

1. I need advice. I have been offered a new job but I really don't know \_\_\_ it or not. 2. Do you know \_\_\_ if the robbers burst into the bank? 3. Can you tell me \_\_\_ if there is a fire? 4. I don't know \_\_\_ the computer. Will this button do? 5. The countries are very interesting and I haven't chosen yet \_\_\_. 6. The TV set is good but I haven't decided yet \_\_\_ it or not. 7. Why have you stopped? Have you forgotten \_\_\_? 8. Have you understood \_\_\_ this device? 9. The problem is serious. I don't know \_\_\_ in this situation. 10. I wonder \_\_\_ a suitcase. The trip will take only two days.

### Exercise 184.

Fill in the blanks with the particle *to* where necessary.

1. I'd rather (listen) to the radio than (see) this soap opera on TV, — As for me, I prefer (watch) TV. You'd better (take) a radio and (go) for a walk. 2. You are cold. You'd better (sit) near the fireplace. 3. She'd prefer (fly) rather than (go) by train. The plane saves time. 4. I'd rather (not go) to the country tomorrow. The weather leaves much to be desired. 5. You'd better (take) an aspirin. You look bad. 6. He preferred (put on) a brown suit. 7. She prefers (not wear) shoes with high heels. 8. I want to get thinner so I'd rather (walk) than (go) by car. 9. You'd better (buy) a mobile telephone, it's more convenient. 10. I'd prefer (go) there in July.

### Exercise 185.

Make up sentences.

Example: *I prefer to go alone / go with him.* — *I prefer to go alone rather than go with him.*

1. I'd rather / stay at home / go out 2. He / prefer / solve a problem immediately / postpone it 3. I'd / prefer / buy it tonight / go shopping early in the morning 4. They'd / prefer / go to the restaurant / cook dinner at home 5. I'd rather / die / betray my friends 6. She / prefer / go to the country / stay in town 7. I'd rather / go to the movies / watch the VCR 8. We'd / prefer / read a book / see a screened version 9. She / prefer / drink a cup of juice / have a substantial breakfast 10. I'd rather / go to the museum / stay at home

### Exercise 186.

Open the brackets and put the verb into | the corresponding form.

Example: *I'd rather you (do) the job yourself.* — *I'd rather you did the job yourself.*

1. I'd rather he (go) on holiday in March. 2. Would you rather I (cook) the supper? 3. I'd rather they (go) with us. 4. Would you rather he (play) the leading part? 5. I'd rather she (buy) a new TV instead of a freezer. 6. Would you rather I (not know) anything? 7. I'd rather you (ask) me a straight question. 8. Would

you rather he (make) a new attempt? 9. I'd rather she (enter) the university. 10. Would you rather she (not interfere)?

### **Exercise 187.**

*Make up sentences according to the example.*

*Example: time/he/come back. — It's time for him to come back.*

1) high time/we/say goodbye to everybody; 2) time/ the child/go to bed; 3) time/she/put up with his behavior; 4) high time/they/develop a new model; 5) about time/ we/leave the house; 6) high time/he/speak English fluently; 7) time/she/choose a profession; 8) high time/ we/buy a new TV set; 9) high time/he/ring me up; 10) time/he/temper justice with mercy.

### **Exercise 188.**

*Change your sentences according to the example.*

*Example: It is high time for them to come back. — It is high time they came back.*

1. It is time for her to make a decision. 2. It is high time for her cousin to find a job. 3. It is high time for us to put up with it. 4. It is time for you to get married. 5. It is high time for me to hand in the composition. 6. It is about time for the chairman to make a break. 7. It is high time for Granny to have a nap. 8. It is high time for Pete to take his mother from the hospital. 9. It is high time for the government to change their policy. 10. It's high time for the local authorities to pull down this house.

### **Exercise 189.**

*Find and correct the mistakes if any.*

1. I'd prefer to speak to you in private than phone you, 2. There is a reporter for interview you. 3. The meat is too hot to eat. 4. You would better help her carry these suitcases. 5. It was very generous from them to give us such a present. 6. Sorry to have failed to keep the appointment. 7. I had rather go without him. 8. She the first to finish the homework. 9. I don't like to be listened to him. 10. I am not sure where going now. 11. Such books are interesting reading, 12. I am the next to fire.

### **Exercise 190.**

*Translate into English.*

1. Она была слишком мала, чтобы запомнить происшествие (incident). 2. Он тот самый человек, с которым можно поговорить по этому вопросу. 3. Для него важно получить информацию сегодня. 4. Вот деньги, которые мы можем потратить на мебель, 5. Они очень довольны (pleased), что их пригласили на конференцию (conference). 6. Вы будете выступать (speak) первым. 7. На эту ошибку надо обратить особое (particular) внимание. 8. Ты бы лучше остался дома. 9. С его стороны благородно (great) сделать все (do one's best) для того, чтобы спасти их. 10. Он не знал, что делать дальше и к кому обращаться с просьбой (make a request). 11. Он позже всех разгадал ее намерения (intentions). 12. Я бы предпочел поехать туда на машине, а не на самолете. 13. Уже совсем темно, давно пора включить свет.

14. Ему пора обратиться к врачу. 15. Я предпочитаю отдыхать где-нибудь на море, а не сидеть на даче.

### The Complex Object

#### Exercise 191.

*Open the brackets and use the Complex Object.*

*Example: He expected (they, arrive) at 5. — He expected them to arrive at 5.*

1. Do you want (they, stay) at the hotel or with us? 2. I'd like (the professor, look through) my report. 3. Do you want (I, show) you the sights of the city? 4. We expect (he, arrange) everything by the time we come. 5. I want (she, tell) me the news in brief. 6. He expected (the meeting, hold) in the Red Room. 7. I would like (they, fix) an appointment for me for Tuesday. 8. We want (she, introduce) us to the president. 9. I don't want (they, be late) for dinner. 10. He expected (she, invite) to the party by the Smiths. 11. I'd like (the dress, buy) by Saturday. 12. I don't want (she, treat) like Alice. 13. We considered (he, be) an honest person. 14. I don't like (she, prevent) me from doing it. 15. I suspect (he, help) by her.

#### Exercise 192.

*Combine the sentences using the Complex Object.*

*Example: I did not see him. He entered the house, — I did not see him enter the house. I saw him. He was entering the house. — / saw him entering the house.*

1. They did not notice us. We passed by. 2. He heard her. She was playing the piano. 3. He saw her. She burst into tears. 4. I felt her hand. It was shaking. 5. He hasn't heard us. We called his name. 6. They haven't seen the accident. It occurred at the corner. 7. I heard them. They were arguing. 8. She heard the footsteps. They were dying away. 9. She felt something. It was crawling around her neck. 10. We many times heard him. He told this story. 11. She noticed the expression of his face. It changed suddenly. 12. I heard somebody. He mentioned my name. 13. I felt something hard. It hurt my leg.

#### Exercise 193.

*Change complex sentences into sentences with the Complex Object.*

1. I did not expect that she would forget about my birthday. 2. She saw how the children were playing in the park. 3. Do you know that he went abroad two days ago? 4. I like to watch how she dances. 5. She could hardly believe that he had been rescued. 6. He expects that everybody will be ready to do this work. 7. I don't like when the children are late for dinner. 8. Don't consider that he is a hero. He is an ordinary man. 9. I've heard how he was arguing with his father. 10. I suspect that he has taken my money. 11. She likes to watch how the sun sets. 12. I hate when people shout at each other. 13. They suppose that he will cope with this work. 14. I've heard how she was crying. 15. We expect that he will solve this problem soon.

#### Exercise 194.

*Open the brackets and use the proper form of the Complex Object.*

1. Where is Nick? — I saw (he, talk) to Kate a few minutes ago. 2. Parents always want (their children, be) the best. 3. I wouldn't like (such valuable

presents, give) to me. 4. I noticed (he, write) something and (pass) it to Alice. 5. We suppose (they, apologize) to us. 6. She watched (the stars, sparkle) in the dark sky. 7. I did not expect (he, behave) in such a way. 8. We don't want (our planet, pollute). 9. I heard (he, work) in his study at night. 10. They expected (he, buy) a more expensive car.

**Exercise 195.**

*Open the brackets and write the correct form of the infinitive.*

1. The doctor wanted the patient \_\_\_\_
  - a) to examine
  - b) to be examined
  - c) being examined
2. There are a lot of people who expect your country \_\_\_\_ the same as their own.
  - a) not to be
  - b) not being
  - c) not be
3. Did you hear the chairman \_\_\_\_ an announcement?
  - a) to make
  - b) making
  - c) be made
4. When I was waiting in the hall, I saw a girl \_\_\_\_ with a file in her hand.
  - a) came out
  - b) to come out
  - c) come out
5. Nobody expected the president of the company \_\_\_\_ to the party.
  - a) coming
  - b) to come
  - c) come
6. I saw him \_\_\_\_ round the corner and \_\_\_\_.
  - a) turn, disappear
  - b) to turn, to disappear
  - c) turning, disappearing
7. She noticed the children \_\_\_\_ behind the tree but pretended to see nothing.
  - a) hiding
  - b) to hide
  - c) to be hidden
8. I want his article \_\_\_\_ in November.
  - a) to publish
  - b) to be published
  - c) publishing
9. He did not expect her \_\_\_\_ about it.
  - a) to be asked
  - b) ask
  - c) asking
10. We did not want his speech \_\_\_\_.

- a) to interrupt
- b) to be interrupted
- c) interrupt

### Exercise 196.

Translate into English using the Complex Object.

1. Я не ожидал, что этот полицейский будет таким невежливым (impolite) человеком.
2. Мы бы хотели, чтобы вы доставили (deliver) товары к концу июня.
3. Я ожидал, что ее пригласят туда.
4. Они не ожидали, что его спросят об этом.
5. Я слышал, как его имя несколько раз упоминалось на собрании.
6. Он не заметил, как мы подошли к нему.
7. Вы видели, как они над чем-то смеялись?
8. Мы не ожидали, что об этом объявят (announce) по радио.
9. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы она сказала нам, что она будет делать сегодня вечером.
10. Я думаю, что сегодня вы услышите, как она поет.
11. Когда он услышал, что его сын плачет, он встал и пошел в детскую комнату (nursery).
12. Я бы хотел, чтобы никто не брал мои вещи.

### The Complex Subject

### Exercise 197.

*Open the brackets and use the Complex Subject.*

Example: He is thought (study) now. — *He is thought to be studying now.* 155

1. He is considered (be) a good musician.
2. They are thought (go away) some days ago.
3. James is expected (make) a report next Wednesday.
4. Steve is known (help) them to solve a problem when they were in trouble.
5. Mozart is known (compose) a lot of wonderful pieces of music.
6. The film is considered (be) the worst of the year.
7. She is supposed (work) in the laboratory from 2 to 6 p.m. tomorrow.
8. They are known (make) a new discovery a month ago.
9. He is expected (manage) the business himself.
10. He is said (be) at the customs office now.
11. The delegation is reported (leave) Prague tonight at 11 a.m.
12. They are known (live) in Egypt for a long time.
13. He is believed (work) at an urgent problem now.

### Exercise 198.

*Change these sentences using be likely, be unlikely, be .sure.*

Example: *He may come on Sunday.* — *He is likely to come on Sunday.* *She may not allow us to go there.* — *She is unlikely to allow us to go there.* *They will certainly help us.* — *They are sure to help us.*

1. They may have a good time in the bar tonight.
2. He will certainly win this match.
3. The plane may not reach the place of destination on time.
4. You may miss the train unless you hurry.
5. She may not go by plane.
6. He may not be invited to the conference.
7. They will certainly get married soon.
8. They may not follow my recommendations.
9. They may go on a world tour.
10. This picture will certainly be the best at the exhibition.

### Exercise 199.

*Open the brackets and use the Complex Subject.*

*Make sentences in bold type less definite and express one's uncertainty of the following.*

*Example: Do you remember his name? — Unfortunately, I don't remember his name. — / don't seem/appear to remember his name.*

1. They got married a month ago. Is she happy? — **No, she is not happy.** 2. **Does** she have a key to her suitcase? — **No, she has lost it.** 3. We are so late. I am sure he has gone. — No, **he is waiting for us.** 4. She looks nice. — **Yes, but she has put on weight.** 5. **I** want to be introduced to Mrs. Smith. — Peter will help you. **He knows her well.** 6. **I** have much trouble with my new washing machine. — No problem. **I know this type very well.** 7. Does he work at the same office? — No, **he changed his job.** 8. Is she still abroad? — **No, she returned two months ago and now is working at her new book.** 9. Look, **this man is overhearing us.** Speak more quietly. 10. **The president has left his country residence and is returning to the capital.**

*B Change your sentences using the verb happen with the verbs in bold type.*

*Example: Do you know Mr. Brown? — Do you happen to know Mr. Brown?*

1. I'll visit Trafalgar Square if I am in London. 2. If anybody knows him, call the police. 3. If you see Kate, ask her to phone me. 4. Do you **know** how to get to the Tower? 5. He'll arrange everything if he **goes** on a tour. 6. Does he **know** with whom Mary has gone to the Canaries? 7. Have you **seen** them leave? 8. Can you change a pound? 9. Has she **seen** where they parked their car? 10. If I **meet** them, I'll phone the police.

*C Change your sentences using verbs turn out or prove.*

*Example: He knows Mr. Brown. — He turned out/proved to know Mr. Brown.*

1. The interview with the young artist was rather interesting. 2. The prices at the hotel were reasonable. 3. The conversation with them was rather unpleasant. 4. The young man was a smuggler. 5. He was a qualified economist. 6. The student's knowledge of mathematics was above the average. 7. Yesterday's party was entertaining. 8. The weather in this part of the country was rainy. 9. The workshop was rather useful for economists, but for managers it was rather dull. 10. **I** bought a book which was a best-seller. 11. This unpleasant man who found faults with me during the interview was my manager.

**Exercise 200.** Choose the right variant.

1. The rain seems\_\_\_\_. Call the children in. I don't want them\_\_\_\_\_.

- a) to be, to be got wet through
- b) to be starting, to get wet through
- c) to have started, to have got wet through
- d) to have been started, to be getting wet through

2. The English colony, Plymouth, in Massachusetts, is known\_\_\_\_by the Pilgrims who arrived on the *Mayflower* in 1620.

- a) to be established
- b) to have established
- c) to have been establishing
- d) to have been established

3. Look, they are likely\_\_\_\_to the news. They seem

- a) to be listening, to be excited

- b) to listen, to be excited  
 c) to have been listening, to have excited  
 d) to have listened, to be being excited
4. He is sure\_\_\_a liar. Everybody heard him\_\_\_ that in so many words.  
 a) to be, to say  
 b) be, say  
 c) to be, say  
 d) be, to say
5. When I came in, the discussion seemed\_\_\_to an end. They appeared\_\_\_patience because they turned out\_\_\_for it.  
 a) to have been coming, to have been losing, be ready  
 b) to be coming, to be losing, not to be ready  
 c) to come, to lose, to be ready  
 d) to have come, to have lost, not to be being ready
6. Jack, you seem\_\_\_too fast. The speed is already 100 miles. I am afraid. I want you\_\_\_the speed till 40 miles.  
 a) to have driven, slow down  
 b) to drive, to slow down  
 c) to be driving, to be slowing down  
 d) to be driving, to slow down

### Exercise 201.

*Translate into English using the Complex Subject.*

1. Стивен обязательно выиграет эту игру. 2. Известно, что Питер уехал в Осло. 3. Предполагают, что президент выступит на конференции. 4. Эту пьесу считают самой интересной в театре. 5. Кажется, она готовит яблочный пирог (apple pie). Пахнет очень вкусно. 6. Боб, наверное, нам поможет. — Он наверняка нам поможет. 7. Полагают, что они уехали вчера. 8. По-видимому, переговоры (talks) закончатся завтра. 9. Полагают, что эта работа была выполнена успешно. 10. Вряд ли этот факт имеет большое значение (be of great importance). 11. Это, вероятно, случится, если ветер не переменится. 12. Говорят, что делегаты на конференцию уже приехали. 13. Известно, что этот комитет был создан несколько лет тому назад. 14. Он, по-видимому, пишет новую книгу. 15. Предполагают, что они смогут решить этот вопрос тотчас же. 16. Известно, что Джек Лондон написал много прекрасных книг.

### Causative Verbs and Have / Got something done

#### Exercise 202.

*Write sentences in the way shown.*

*Example: He did not paint the walls. — He had (got) them painted.*

1. He did not fix the fridge. 2. I did not wash the floor. 3. She did not type the article, 4. He did not translate the letter. 5. They did not repair the house. 6. I did

not wash the car. 7. She did not make the dress. 8. He did not cook supper. 9. He did not iron the shirt. 10. They did not build the fence.

### **Exercise 203.**

*Choose the right variant.*

1. Get your children (to feel/feel/felt) responsible for their studies. 2. She had her husband (to entertain/ entertain/entertained) the guests while she was making tea. 3. He got them (to pay/pay/paid) for the damage. 4. She had her carpets (to clean/clean/cleaned). 5. He couldn't get the dog (to rise/rise/risen). 6. She had the porter (to carry/carry/carried).her luggage. 7. She got her baggage (to carry/carry/carried) in. 8. Peter the Great got his noblemen (to have/have/had) their beards (to shave/shave/shaven). 9. The rebellions had the president (to leave/leave/left) the country. 10. She had to get the tyre (to change/change/changed). 11. The manager had his employees (to work/work/worked) till seven. 12. She got him (to buy/buy/bought) an expensive gold bracelet for her. 13. Din has his things (to wash/wash/washed) in the laundry. 14. She couldn't get the child (to go/go/ gone) to bed. 15. Speak to him, please; try to get him (to refuse/refuse/refused) this offer.

### **Exercise 204.**

*Use the correct form of the verb.*

1. Her remark made everybody (feel) uncomfortable. 2. They got the manager (sign) the contract. 3. She was made (give up) smoking. 4. They got him (sell) the car. 5. Let him (do) the task himself. 6. He had a fireplace (install) in the corner of the sitting room. 7. She bought a nice dress but she had to get the sleeves (shorten). 8. The professor let Mike (leave) the room. 9. They were made (hand) in their reports on Thursday. 10. He let me (decide) for myself. 11. They had him (contribute) to expenses. 12. The teacher got the pupils (learn) the poem by heart. 13. He took a lot of photos during his holiday and got them (develop). 14. The robber had the teller (open) the safe. 15. The opposition got the government (decrease) prices. 16. Don't let them (attend) the conference. 17. They were made (go) to the police station. 18. He got the chairman (make) an announcement, 19. She made him (forget) the incident. 20. Do you let your children (watch) TV till late at night? 21. I got my son (shave) his moustache. 22. Let your children (have) tastes in music different from yours.

### **Exercise 205.**

*Find and correct the mistakes if any.*

1. My mother won't let anybody to think ill of him. 2. It was so difficult for me to get him to believe us again. 3. The party was dull, and we decided to tell stories to make the time to pass. 4. Nick got Mary given him a lift to the school. 5. He will try to get her to replace him. 6. Let's to try to get them join our company. 7. She got the telephone to repair. 8. The thought of his coming made me to feel ill. 9. The wind made the windows rattled. 10. They must have the problem settle. 11. She had the secretary to make another copy. 12. He had the copy to make. 13. They did their best to make themselves agreeing to the



proposal. 14. He changed his mind to have his house to paint green, 15. Let him choosing his friends himself. 16. Your enthusiasm makes me to feel young again. 17. She had a desire let her life to go on as though nothing had happened. 18. The director got his paper to type. 19. The teacher made the girl do the exercise again. 20. What makes you to think so? 21. The boy was made to water the garden. 22. She is getting her hair to cut tomorrow. 23. She did not let her daughter to go to discos. 24. Let's try to have him come to the party. 25. I got him to go to India.

### Exercise 206.

*Translate the sentences with causative verbs into English (you may have several variants).*

1. Грабители (robbers) заставили людей, находящихся в банке, встать к стене. 2. Пусть ребенок съест мороженое. 3. Я не виноват. Меня заставили сделать это. 4. Вчера мне вымыли окна. 5. Позвольте мне попытаться сделать это самому. 6. Дети очень шумят. Пусть они идут гулять. 7. Его заставили выполнять скучную (dull) работу. 8. Я уговорил ее поехать отдохнуть (go for a holiday). 9. Ему отремонтировали квартиру. 10. Затруднительные обстоятельства (circumstances) заставили его поступать таким образом. 11. Давай сделаем перерыв (break) на обед. 12. Ты должен заставить ее принять это предложение. 13. Дайте знать, когда захотите меня повидать снова. 14. Он уговорил своего соседа присматривать за собакой во время его отсутствия (absence). 15. Интересно, что заставило его убить президента? 16. Она всегда разрешает своим детям смотреть мультфильмы (cartoons) в воскресенье, 17. Подозреваемого (suspect) заставили лечь на землю (ground). 18. Ей нужно починить часы. 19. Она плохо себя чувствует: ей вчера удалили (pull out) зуб. 20. Он не строил дом сам, ему его построили.

## The Gerund

### Exercise 207.

*You can use either gerunds or infinitives after the following verbs. Find the odd word in the chain of the verbs.*

Example: fancy   avoid   agree   postpone

1) deny   practise   afford   suggest

2) offer   mention   risk   mind

3) put off   prove   learn   aim

4) admit   fancy   fail   consider

5) expect   happen   give up   tend

6) enjoy   endure   imagine   appear

7)        can't adore   refuse   carry on

help

8) delay   have   intend   spend

              difficulty                    time

9)        can't keep   resist   seem

stand

10) be busy    neglect            threaten plan

**Exercise 208.**

*Complete the following sentences using gerunds.*

1. (Be) free and alone is a good thing if you are tired of big cities. 2. (Find) you here was a quite a surprise. 3. If this is what you intend (ask) me, stop (waste) your time. 4. They kept on (talk) though the band began (play). 5. Everyone enjoyed (swim) in the river. 6. My watch needs (repair). 7. He never mentioned (live) in Prague. 8. He does not seem to mind (air) the room. 9. Just imagine (go) there together! 10. Don't put off (do) it now. If you postpone (receive) a visa again, you will miss an excellent opportunity of (go) there.

**Exercise 209.**

*Match the parts of the sentences.*

- 1) Making money
- 2) Being born in my provincial town
- 3) There is a general feeling all around
- 4) He promised them that no harm
- 5) Would you mind
  - a) would come to them for signing the papers.
  - b) looking up his telephone number?
  - c) is my dream also.
  - d) wasn't much different from being born in Brooklyn.
  - e) that her running away was a good thing.

**Exercise 210.**

Complete the following sentences with gerunds formed from the verbs in the box.

buy            comment  
answer        sign  
pay            help  
recognize     make go            see  
escape

1. \_\_\_ big prices for famous pictures is now a wealthy man's way of \_\_\_ taxation. 2. English grammar is very difficult and few writers have avoided \_\_\_ mistakes. 3. Maurice was saved from \_\_\_ by Kate's entry with the tray. 4 The elderly ladies enjoyed \_\_\_ who came in and out, \_\_\_ old friends, and \_\_\_ unfavourably how these had aged. 5. Of course the contract is mutually beneficial and he is all for \_\_\_ it. 6. The important part of his life is \_\_\_ people. 7. Parks at night is a dangerous place to walk. Avoid \_\_\_ there after darkness. 8. Father suggested \_\_\_ a new machine.

**Exercise 211.**

*Make up sentences using gerunds.*

1. Forgive (I, take up) so much of your time. 2. Do you mind (he, join) us? 3. Does he feel like (stay) here for another week? 4. I appreciate (you, encourage)

him when he failed in his experiment. 5. Do you know the reason for (he, feel) disappointed? 6. "It's no good (you, hate) it," he said becoming didactic. 7. Only the other day they had been talking about (something, happen), 8, She was listening hard all the time for any sound of (Jan, descend) the stairs. 9. He wishes he'd never told you the truth but it's no use (he, deny) it. 10. Cursing himself for (not learn) to drive a car he woke up Toni. 11. Of course, I should insist on (you, accept) the proper professional fee. 12. Bob was feeling rather unwell, and was not really looking forward to (we, visit) him. 13. My father thinks I am not capable of (earn) my own living. 14. He warned us that there was no point in (we, arrive) half an hour earlier. 15. They were talking about (she, give up) the job and (go) to live in the country.

### **Exercise 212.**

*Open the brackets and use the proper gerund either in the active or passive voice.*

1. The speaker was annoyed at (interrupt) every other moment. 2. He showed no sign of (hurt). 3. They showed no sign of (recognize) us. 4. He insists on (pay) for his work done. 5. We did not want to speak to the correspondent and tried to avoid (interview) by him. 6. Excuse me for (give) so much trouble to you. 7. After (examining) by the doctor I was given a sick leave. 8. They deny (rob) the bank, but admit (make) plans about it. 9. The problem is not worth (speak of). 10. Why does he avoid (meet) journalists? 11. She insisted on (show) the files to her. 12. She does not stand (remind) people of their duties and (remind) of hers. 13. He is not used to (speak to) like that. 14. He had never thought of security because he had no idea of (kidnap). 15. Did you succeed in (persuade) your colleagues? 16, The TV set needs (repair). 17. He is looking forward to (give) the main part in the play. 18. After (look through) the papers were registered. 19. He can't do anything without (disturb) anybody or (disturb). 20. Have you ever dreamed of (earn) a million dollars?

### **Exercise 213.**

*Complete the sentences on the right using the gerunds formed from the verbs in the box.*

persuade	go
remember	gamble
do	see
try	visit
talk	watch
buy	get
speak	cry

4. Do you ever watch TV? Never. I think it's a waste of time\_\_\_\_. 2.1 advise you to see the film which is on at our local cinema. It is worth\_\_\_\_. 3. He is speaking too much. I think it's no use\_\_\_\_into every detail. 4. Why are you speaking so much of it? To my mind, the matter is not worth\_\_\_\_of. 5. Why are you crying? You are seven years old already. Is it good\_\_\_\_over the broken doll? 6. Stay in bed then. It is no good.\_\_\_\_anything if

you feel bad. 7. Have you talked to Alice? Yes, but we had difficulty \_\_\_ to her. I did not expect her to be so stubborn. I think it's a waste of time \_\_\_ her to follow our advice. 8. She has bought a new fur coat. Well, to my mind, there is no point in \_\_\_ a new one if she has already got four coats! 9. What are you going to do tonight? Let's go to the casino. I think it is a waste of money \_\_\_. 10. Where have you been this summer? In Moscow, I had difficulty \_\_\_, a visa. 11. She has left for Paris. It's no use \_\_\_ to get in touch with her. 12. England and Brazil are going to play tomorrow. I've already bought tickets. Matches between England and Brazil are worth \_\_\_. 13. Ronald Reagan often used Russian proverbs in his speech. I think he supposed they were worth \_\_\_.

### Exercise 214.

*Fill in the blanks with prepositions after, before, by, on, without.*

1. What did she mean \_\_\_ boasting like this? 2. His knowledge has improved \_\_\_ taking a training course. 3. He could tell the funniest story \_\_\_ smiling. 4. \_\_\_ entering the house she rushed to the telephone \_\_\_ greeting anybody. 5. You can keep healthy and fit \_\_\_ jogging in the morning. 6. Where did he go \_\_\_ finishing his work? 7. \_\_\_ writing an article about the events he must go to the place where they are taking place. 8. \_\_\_ hearing a woman's cry he jumped up from his seat. 9. \_\_\_ going through the customs office he went aboard the plane. 10. She was upset \_\_\_ not getting an answer from him.

### Exercise 215.

*Fill in the blanks with proper gerunds (use the verbs in the box).*

Send call go take speak find accomplish come part laugh gamble  
explain steal  
Cheat support live take buy

1, He has succeeded in \_\_\_ a difficult task and we are proud of him. 2. You should ask him for help. It seems to me that he is very good at \_\_\_ everything. 3, Mr. Grimsby hasn't got enough experience. I am against \_\_\_ in our work and I object \_\_\_ to the conference. 4. The audience burst out \_\_\_ at the sight of the monkey going through different tricks. 5. Do you know he has given up \_\_\_? 6. I don't insist on \_\_\_ there by plane. 7. Though nobody suspected him of \_\_\_, his companions accused him of \_\_\_ them when he was responsible for \_\_\_ goods for their company. 8. They are engaged in \_\_\_ new people for their firm. 9. Why do you persist in \_\_\_ him? 10. He is fed up with \_\_\_ alone. He is looking forward to his family \_\_\_ in two days. 11. They prevented us from \_\_\_ rash steps. 12. She feels like \_\_\_ too much when she drinks a glass of champagne. 13. He decided against \_\_\_ her again.

### Exercise 216.

*Fill in the blanks with prepositions or adverbs where necessary.*

1. The policeman accused him \_\_\_ exceeding the speed limit. 2. She has been dreaming \_\_\_ flying to the Bahamas. 3. The rain prevented him \_\_\_ going to the

country. 4. They have decided \_\_\_ buying a new car. 5. He succeeded \_\_\_ being promoted. 6. I feel \_\_\_ staying at home. It is rather cold. Let's watch a new film on TV instead \_\_\_ going to the picnic. 7. She is fed \_\_\_ staying in the village. 8. He went to the disco despite \_\_\_ having a headache. 9. She is looking \_\_\_ playing the leading part in the performance. 10. I think it's no use \_\_\_ trying to get him home. 11. Everybody congratulated her \_\_\_ passing the exam so well. 12. He is not very good \_\_\_ taking decisions quickly. 13. They don't approve \_\_\_ her getting married to James. 14. The police suspect him \_\_\_ drug smuggling. 15. We have difficulty \_\_\_ installing the new equipment.

### Exercise 217.

*Paraphrase the sentences using the gerunds. Use prepositions or adverbs where necessary (gerundial phrases are in bold type).*

*Example: We have no objections. **They may leave at once.** — We have no objections to their leaving at once.*

**1. He is unable to resist her charm.** It's funny. 2. **They told the truth.** You shouldn't deny it. **3. You shouldn't take advantage of people's weakness.** It's no good. **4. I confided in this man.** I admit it. 5. **She accepted the proposal.** Her mother was displeased with it. **& We rang the bell** and we were admitted to the hall. 7. I'd like **to speak to you frankly.** I hope you don't mind it. 8. **He is admitted to our closed circle.** I object to it. 9. He was afraid **that I would change the decision.** 10. I regret that **I gave you so much trouble.** 11. **After he had studied the weather forecast in great detail,** he said he would go back to London. 12. Why do you insist that he **should be present there?** 13. I am really ashamed **that I haven't written to you for so long.** 14. **You submitted the report to the secretary.** I remember it. 15. I was prepared to dislike Mr. Kalada **even before I met him.** 16. He suggested that we **should start at once.** 17. Mrs. Knight disliked that **I told the truth.** 18. We are looking forward to the fact that **you will spend the summer with us.** 19. He is responsible that **the letter is delivered only today.** 20. This woman's face attracted his attention as familiar for he remembered that **she had passed by him several times.**

### Exercise 218.

*Open the brackets with either gerunds or infinitives. Use prepositions or adverbs where necessary.*

1. There is no point (worry) about these things. 2. Do you want me (order) a long-distance call? 3. Before (give) evidence you must swear (speak) the truth. 4. I've seen him (leave) the office early this afternoon. He seemed (be) unhappy about something. 5. She didn't succeed (be) economical. 6. Would you mind (look up) his telephone number? 7. I'm looking forward (make) an appointment with this businessman. 8. It was a lovely day, so I suggested (go) to the country. 9. Would you mind (close) the window? I hate (sit) in a draught. 10. It's worth (arrange) the things properly. 11. I'd like you (arrange) everything by the time I come back. 12. It's very difficult (deal) with him because he got used (do) everything in his own way. 13. The teacher was very strict. Nobody dared

(speak) to each other. 14. They don't have much money. They can't afford (go) out very often. 15. It is no use (have) a car if you don't know how (drive).

### **Exercise 219.**

*Choose the right variant with the following verbs.*

#### *A remember*

1. Remember (to look/looking) ahead when driving.
2. When you go on that mission please remember (to point out/pointing out) to people there that our stand on this issue remains the same. — I won't fail to do that.
3. Do you remember (to meet/meeting) them last summer?
4. Remember (to phone/phoning) as soon as arrive.
5. The policeman asked me if I clearly remembered (to lock/locking) the door before I went to bed.
6. I remember (to pay/paying) him. I gave him two pounds.
7. Did you remember (to give/giving) him the key to the safe? — No, I didn't. I'll go and do it now.
8. I don't remember ever (to see/seeing) you.
9. She does not remember (to ask/asking) this question.
10. We remember (to stay/staying) a weekend with her. She is a nice woman.
11. When you are on holiday remember (to send/sending) postcards to a few close friends.

#### *B regret*

1. I regret (to tell/telling) you all the tickets for this performance have been sold.
2. He's always regretted (not to learn/not learning) to play a musical instrument.
3. They regret (to fail/failing) to understand the importance of your proposal.
4. I regret (to inform/informing) you that your application has been rejected.
5. I don't regret (to quarrel/quarrelling) with him.
6. The manager regrets (to say/saying) that your proposal has been turned down.
7. We regret (to miss/missing) this film. It is worth seeing.
8. I regret (to say/saying) I won't be able to come.
9. She regrets (not to be able/not being able) say goodbye to him.
10. If you regret (to do/doing) something, you are sorry about an action in the past.

#### *C be (get) used to/used to*

1. He used to (be/being) good at mathematics.
2. I got used to (get up/getting up) very early.
3. In the Dark Ages people used to (think/thinking) that the sun goes round the earth.
4. He wasn't used to (work/working) late at night.
5. He used to (study/studying) late at night when a youth.
6. She was used to (wander/wandering) about the fields by herself.
7. In my childhood my aunt used to (bring/bringing) little presents for me.
8. He quickly got used to (have/having) a good meal and nice suits.
9. He used to (say/saying) that there was nothing like warm crisp brown bread spread with honey.
10. The mother was used to (do/doing) all the work about the house alone.
11. The mother used to (do/doing) all the work about the house,

#### *D try*

1. Why don't you try (to lose/losing) some weight?
2. He tried (to go/going) to evening classes but his English was still hopeless.
3. She tried (to explain/explaining) the situation but he refused to listen and went on grumbling.
4. Do stop talking, I am trying (to write/writing) a letter.
5. He tried (to

persuade/persuading) them to sign a contract. 6. Try (to forget/forgetting) it, it is not worth worrying about. 7. I tried (to catch/ catching) his eye, but he sat motionless. 8. He tried (to cook/cooking) but failed. 9. They had tried (to introduce/ introducing) many other methods in return to the initial one.

#### *E stop*

1. If you stop (to do/doing) something, you finish an action. 2. If you stop (to do/doing) something, you interrupt one action in order to do something else. 3. We stopped (to buy/buying) food in the store because the owner raised the prices. 4. We stopped (to buy/buying) food in the store because we were hungry. 5. Do stop (to make/making) this awful noise! 6. We've only stopped (to buy/buying) some petrol. 7. They stopped (to produce/ producing) refrigerators because of their workers' strike. 8. He suddenly stopped (to speak/speaking), got up and left without saying anything.

#### *F be afraid to/be afraid of*

1. I'm afraid (to take/taking) an exam because I'm afraid (to fail/failing) it. 2. He was afraid (to leave/ leaving) the house because he was afraid (to meet/meeting) someone who might recognise him. 3. He was afraid (to say/saying) a word because he did not know anybody. 4. I am afraid (to go/going) by plane. 5. He was afraid (to tell/telling) her the sad news. 6. My sister is such a coward! She can't see horror films because she is afraid (to meet/ meeting) a ghost at night. 7. He was afraid (to make/ making) the next step because he was afraid (to fall/falling) because he was standing on the brink of the precipice.

#### *G can't help*

1. It is silly of me, but I can't help (to feel/feeling) anxious. 2. I can't help (to laugh/laughing) at his jokes. 3. They can't help him (to do/doing) the exercise. 4. She could not help (to be attracted/being attracted) by the fact that she was being looked at. 5. He couldn't help his son (to solve/solving) the problem. 6. She couldn't help (to phone/phoning) her mother when she heard the news.

#### **Exercise 220.**

*Open the brackets with either gerunds or infinitives.*

1. I don't remember (switch off) the TV set. I'd better (go) and (check) it. 2. The weather is very nice. Let's (go) for a swim. — I am not particularly good at (swim). What about (go) for a drive instead of (bathing)? 3. We stopped once (buy) some food, and then we stopped again (ask) the way. 4. Do you feel like (dine) out or would you rather (have) dinner at home? — I'd like (go) out. I always enjoy (have) dinner at a restaurant. 5. I don't mind (travel) by bus but I hate (stand) if there are a lot of people. I think it's better (go) by tube. 6. Would you like (come) to the conference devoted to the theatre? — No, thanks. I like (see) performances but I don't enjoy (listen) to people talking about it. 7. I'm delighted (hear) that you can come for the weekend. We are all looking forward to (see) you. 8. The autumn is wonderful! You got used to (swim) in September, so remember (bring) your bathing suit. 9. I remember (lend) that book to you. You wanted (write) a report. — Oh, I'm so sorry! I'll bring it back tonight. 10. When would you like (start off)? — In a few moments. — Let's (wait) till it

stops (snow) otherwise we may get lost. 11. Do you remember (meet) her at my birthday party? — Yes, certainly. Thank you for the chance (meet) such a beautiful and witty girl. 12. The results are very disappointing, I regret (say). I allow you (to rewrite) the test. But I allow (rewrite) on condition everyone is present. 13. You know I meant (buy) something for supper but the shop was closed. — OK. It means (have) sandwiches and tea for supper.

### **Exercise 221.**

*Find and correct the mistakes if any.*

1. I think you made a mistake to come here. 2. When he told me about his plans, I couldn't help to be surprised. It absolutely wasn't in his line. 3. I can't help you preparing this historical sketch. 4. It's no use persuading such a stubborn person. 5. People often have difficulty to learn a foreign language. 6. I congratulated Ann to enter University. 7. We called after him, but he did not even stop turning his head. 8. I don't remember him to tell anything of the kind. 9. They couldn't forgive me for wasting so much time. 10. It is not worth to take up the matter now; it can wait.

### **Exercise 222.**

*Choose the correct variant.*

1. He was clever enough \_\_\_\_\_ in this delicate situation.
  - a) avoiding, speaking
  - b) to avoid, to speak
  - c) avoiding, to speak
  - d) to avoid, speaking
2. I wonder if there is any use \_\_\_\_\_ him.
  - a) trying, improving
  - b) trying, to improve
  - c) to try, to improve
  - d) to try, improving
3. Please let it \_\_\_\_\_ clearly. I am not used \_\_\_\_\_ something twice.
  - a) understand, to saying
  - b) to understand, to say
  - c) be understood, to saying
  - d) be understood, to say
4. Suddenly she burst out \_\_\_\_\_ with the words, "I'm sick and tired \_\_\_\_\_ soups and porridges for him. I can't go on \_\_\_\_\_ my best years."
  - a) crying, of making, wasting
  - b) to cry, to make, to waste
  - c) to cry, of making, wasting
  - d) crying, to make, wasting
5. He had some difficulty, \_\_\_\_\_ his temper. This scene was worth \_\_\_\_\_. After that he avoided \_\_\_\_\_ by his friends.
  - a) to control, to watch, to see
  - b) controlling, watching, seeing
  - c) controlling, watching, being seen



d) being controlled, being watched, to be seen

### **Exercise 223.**

*Translate into English using gerunds where possible.*

1. Я настаиваю, чтобы ты показал нам свой новый автомобиль, 2. Маленький мальчик гордился тем, что у него такой благородный (noble) друг. 3. Этот фильм стоит посмотреть. Вам не сможет не понравиться прекрасная игра (performance) актеров. 4. Было невозможно достать билет, и ему пришлось отказаться от мысли послушать знаменитого пианиста. 5. Я помню, он громко смеялся, когда рассказывал эту историю. 6. Она была уверена, что мальчики уже давно перестали работать и убежали на речку. 7. Она сидела в гостиной (drawing room), не говоря ни слова и не обращая внимания на болтовню (chat) своей сестры. 8. Не отвечая на приветствия, он быстро прошел в зал. 9. Мне надоело быть старым и мудрым, и я не выношу, когда ко мне относятся (treat) как к инвалиду. 10. Он намеревался начать свое расследование (investigation) с осмотра сада. 11. Помыв посуду и прибрав все на кухне, она легла на диван. 12. Если ты не скажешь мне, в чем дело, какая польза оттого, что я здесь? 13. Я даже не мог прогуляться без того, чтобы он ко мне не подошел. 14. Он терпеть не может, когда его хвалят. 15. Ему не нравилось, что дочь часами болтает по телефону. 16. Он пытался найти предлог (pretext), чтобы уйти пораньше. 17. Надеюсь, вы не возражаете, если ему все расскажут? 18. Вы не забыли отправить письмо, которое он вам дал? 19. Видя наши затруднения, они предложили свою помощь. 20. Они не могли не рассмеяться при виде (at the sight of) клоуна.

## **The Participle**

### **Exercise 224.**

*Open the brackets and use the correct form of Participle I.*

1. That night, (go) up to his room he thought of his unpleasant duty. 2. She smiled (remember) the joke. 3. A new road will soon be built (connect) the plant with the railway station. 4. He speaks like a man (take) his opinion of everything. 5. (Not know) that she could trust them she did not know what to do. 6. And (say) this he threw himself back in the armchair. 7. I spent about ten minutes (turn) over the sixteen pages of *The Guardian* before I found the main news and articles. 8. (Be) so far away he still feels himself part of the community. 9. The boy came out of the water (shake) from top to toe. 10. (Support) her by the arm he helped her out of the taxi.

### **Exercise 225.**

*Paraphrase the following using Participle I where it is possible.*

*Example: The man who is speaking to Mary is a well-known surgeon. — The man speaking to Mary is a well-known surgeon.*

1. The woman who is working in the garden is my sister. 2. The man who made a report yesterday came back from the USA. 3. I couldn't ring them up because I did not know their telephone number. 4. We went to see our friends who had

just returned from a voyage. 5. The sidewalks were crowded with people who were watching the carnival. 6. He had a massive gold watch, which had belonged to his father. 7. He stood at the counter and hesitated, he did not know what to choose. 8. The conferences, which are held at the University every year, are devoted to ecological problems. 9. Unable to attend the conference that took place a month ago, we asked to send the typewritten reports. 10. I looked at the people who were lying on the beach. 11. The people who are waiting for the doctor have been sitting here for a long time. 12. The man who phoned you yesterday is waiting for you downstairs.

**Exercise 226.**

*Open the brackets and use the correct form of Participle II.*

1. She looked at the table. There was a loaf of brown bread (divide) into two halves. 2. There was another pause (break) by a fit of laughing of one of the old men sitting in the first row. 3. The child (leave) alone in the large room began screaming. 4. The centre of the cotton industry is Manchester (connect) with Liverpool by a canal. 5. The story (tell) by the old captain made the young girl cry. 6. He did not doubt that the information (receive) by morning mail was of great interest for his competitors. 7. The equipment (install) in the shop is rather sophisticated. 8. We've got a great variety of products, which are in great demand. Here are some samples (send) to our distributors last month. 9. The methods that were applied in the building of the new metro stations proved to be efficient. 10. She warmed over the dinner that she cooked yesterday.

**Exercise 227.**

*Paraphrase the following using Participle II.*

*Example: These are only a few of the attempts, which were made to improve the situation. — These are only a few of the attempts made to improve the situation.*

1. The new job, which has been offered to me lately, seems to be very interesting. 2. He could not recognize the square, which was rebuilt, while he was away. 3. The news, which you've brought to us, is exciting. 4. The things that are left behind by passengers are usually taken to the Lost Property Office. 5. The animals, which were Caught in the morning, struggled furiously. 6. The answer, which had been so long expected, came at last. 7. There was a dead silence in the room, which was broken only by his cough. 8. The sunrays lighted the magnificent house, which was built on the hill. 9. The castle, which was built many years ago, was in good order. 10. The typewriter that was bought a few days ago has gone wrong.

**Exercise 228.**

*Open the brackets and use participial constructions with the conjunctions when, while, as if, as though, if, till, unless.*

*Example: When you cross the street, be careful at the crossroads. — When crossing the street, be careful at the crossroads.*

1. When he was lying he spoke more quickly than when he was telling the truth. 2. She stood in front of the mirror as if she were speaking to herself. 3. She screamed as though she had been badly hurt. 4. He is a quiet man. He never

hurries unless he is pressed for time. 4. While I was waiting for you, I was looking through newspapers and magazines. 5. When he was asked about it, he could say nothing. 6. When the article is translated, it will be typed. 7. While I was crossing the street yesterday, I saw an accident. 8. A promise counts so little till it is kept. 9. When he was a student he used to study at the library. 10. He was hesitating whether to take the step, which if it was mistaken, could put him to trouble.

### **Exercise 229.**

*Open the brackets and use the correct form of Participle I Perfect.*

1. (see) so little of the country, I am afraid I cannot answer all your questions. 2. (arrive) two days before the conference he had a lot of time to see Edinburgh. 3. I felt very tired (work) the whole day in the sun. 4. (buy) a pair of gloves we moved to the shoe department. 5. She left (tell) us all she had found out. 6. (get) what he wanted he took his hat and left. 7. By this time (get used) to the atmosphere of the big city, he no longer felt a stranger. 8. I felt refreshed and rested (sleep) for eight hours. 9. (complete) all our preparations we hired a taxi and hurried off. 10. Never (experience) such difficulties she was at a loss.

### **Exercise 230.**

*Open the brackets and fill in with the proper participle.*

1. He fell asleep (exhaust) by the journey. 2. She entered the dining room (accompany) by her husband and her father. 3. A snake (sleep) in the grass will bite if anyone treads upon it. 4. (Fill) his pockets with apples the boy was about to run away when he saw the owner of the garden with a stick in his hand. 5. It was a bright Sunday morning of early summer (promise) heat. 6. When I came home, I found the table (lay). 7. (Judge) by the colour of the sun it should be windy tomorrow. 8. (Arrive) at a big seaport, I started to look for a job. 9. He had received an urgent message (ask) him to telephone Sir Matthew. 10. He looked at groups of young girls (walk) arm in arm. 11. In the wood they sat down on a (fall) tree. 12. (See) from the hill the city looks magnificent. 13. (Not know) where to go he turned to a passer by. 14. (Lock) in her room she threw a fit. 15. (Address) the parcel, I went out at once to post it. 16. She often took care of my little sister (give) me a possibility to play with other boys. 17. (Wash) her face in cold water, she came up to the window and shut it. 18. Paul sat down again, evidently (change) his mind about going.

### **Exercise 231.**

*Choose the right variant.*

1. She stayed \_\_\_ in her room, \_\_\_ to come downstairs.
  - a) having locked, refused
  - b) locked, refusing
  - c) locking, having refused
2. She had a good practical knowledge of French \_\_\_ as an interpreter for many years in France.
  - a) working
  - b) having worked

- c) worked
3. When we\_\_\_from our day's outing came into the kitchen, we found dinner\_\_\_.
- a) returned, serving  
b) having returned, served  
c) returning, having served
- 4.\_\_\_by his elbow, Mary listened to their talk.
- a) supported  
b) supporting  
c) having supported
- 5.\_\_\_their meal they went for a stroll in the park.
- a) finishing  
b) finished  
c) having finished
6. Fruits\_\_\_in hothouses are not so rich in colour, taste and vitamins as fruits\_\_\_in natural conditions.
- a) having grown, grown  
b) grown, growing  
c) growing, having grown
- 7.\_\_\_in the reception room he thought over what he would say when he was asked into the office.
- a) waiting  
b) waited  
c) having waited
8. She used to say sharp and\_\_\_words to him.
- a) having wounded  
b) wounded  
c) wounding
9. I admired the grounds and trees\_\_\_the house.
- a) surrounding  
b) having surrounded e) surrounded
- 10 She looked at the scene\_\_\_to the innermost of her heart.
- a) shaking  
b) shaken  
c) having shaken

**Exercise 232.**

*Find and correct the mistakes if any.*

1, Felt tired and having nothing more to do till he came, she sat into the armchair at the window having looked at the mountains lighting by the sun. 2. On the walls there were some common coloured pictures, framing and glazed. 3. His house was close at hand, a very pleasant little cottage, painted white, with green blinds. 4, It was the hour of sunset, having unnoticed in the cities, so beautiful in the country. 5. Finished breakfast, he stayed for some minutes in the dining room. 6. Mother smiled looking at the children played in the garden. 7. While

reading a book, I came across several interesting expressions. 8. Some questions having touched upon in the report are worth considering. 9. Leaving our suitcases we went sightseeing. 10. Hearing her come into the house he went downstairs.

### **Exercise 233.**

*Translate into English using participles where possible.*

1. Будьте внимательны, когда ведете машину. 2. На листе бумаги было несколько строк, написанных карандашом. 3. Получив телеграмму, моя сестра немедленно выехала в Глазго. 4. Я не знаю человека, говорящего по телефону. 5. Уехав вечером, мы прибыли в город в 6 утра. 6. Полученное известие взволновало всех. 7. Я оставила ей записку, не застав ее дома. 8. Чувствуя усталость, они решили передохнуть. 9. Я не запомнил имя человека, звонившего вам вчера. 10. Мы сидели на террасе, наслаждаясь чудесным видом гор, окружающих наш отель.

### **Exercise 234**

*(Revision.) Open the brackets and fill in with the proper verbals (infinitives, gerunds or participles). Use prepositions if necessary.*

#### **The Bees**

I remember when I was a child (send) (visit) one of our numerous elderly eccentric aunts. She was mad about bees; the garden was full of bees, (hum) like telegraph poles. One afternoon she put on an enormous veil and a pair of gloves, locked us all in the cottage for safety, and went out (try) (get) some honey out of one of the hives. Apparently she did not stupefy them properly, or whatever it is to do, and when she took the lid off, the bees poured out and settled on her. We were watching all this through the window. We didn't know much about bees, so we thought this was all right, until we saw her (fly) round the garden (make) desperate attempts (avoid) the bees, (get) her veil tangled in the rosebushes. Eventually she reached the cottage and flung herself at the door. We couldn't open it because she had the key. We kept (try) (tell) her this, but her screams of agony and the humming of the bees drowned our voices. It was I believe Leslie who had the brilliant idea (throw) a bucket of water over her from the bedroom window. Unfortunately in his enthusiasm he threw the bucket as well. (Drench) with cold water and then (hit) on the head with a large iron bucket is irritating enough, but (fight off) a mass of bees at the same time makes the whole thing extremely trying. When we eventually got her inside she was so swollen as to be almost unrecognizable.

#### **Tests**

Choose the right variant.

1. He seemed \_\_\_ all about influenza and said \_\_\_ was nothing \_\_\_ about.
- a) to know, it, to worry
  - b) to be knowing, there, worrying
  - c) to know, there, to worry
  - d) to have known, it, to have been worried

2. She put down her book \_\_\_me\_\_\_; and \_\_\_me \_\_\_took her workbasket and sat into one of the old-fashioned armchair.

- a) to see, coming in, have welcomed, as usually
- b) having seen, to come in, welcoming, usually
- c) on seeing, come in, having welcomed, as usual
- d) after seeing, having come in, to welcome, in a usual way

3. I don't object \_\_\_there, but I don't want \_\_\_ alone.

- a) to your living, you living
- b) you to live, your living
- c) your living, you to live
- d) to your living, you to live

4. I remember \_\_\_that hill in twilight. An age seemed \_\_\_since the day that brought me first to London.

- a) descending, to have elapsed
- b) to have descended, to have elapsed
- c) to descend, to elapse
- d) being descended, to be elapsed

187

5. He stood invisible at the top of the stairs \_\_\_Irene \_\_\_the letters \_\_\_by the \_\_\_post.

- a) to watch, to sort, bringing, latest
- b) watching, sorting, brought, last
- c) having watched, sorting, having brought, latest
- d) being watched, having sorted, to have been brought, last

6. On his way home Andrew could not help \_\_\_what \_\_\_charming fellow Ivory had turned out \_\_\_.

- a) to reflect, a, to be
- b) being reflected, the, have been
- c) reflecting, the, be
- d) reflecting, a, to be

7. I wouldn't like \_\_\_because I'm afraid \_\_\_.

- a) drive fast, crashing
- b) to drive fast, of crashing
- c) driving fastly, to crash
- d) to be driven faster, to be crashed

8. \_\_\_paper is said \_\_\_by \_\_\_Chinese.

- a) \_\_\_, to have been invented, the
- b) the, to have been invented, \_\_\_
- c) \_\_\_, to have invented, \_\_\_
- d) the, to be invented, the

9. There is no point \_\_\_to him. He is \_\_\_last man in the world \_\_\_by any such circumstances.

- a) to speak, the, to trouble
- b) to speak, \_\_\_, being troubled

- c) speaking, a, be troubled  
d) in speaking, the, to be troubled
10. It's high time you \_\_\_ like that. He is fond \_\_\_ fun of everybody.  
a) get used to him to behave, to make  
b) used to his behaving, about making  
c) got used to his behaving, of making  
d) used to behave, to make
11. He felt \_\_\_ something from him and demanded \_\_\_ truth. He wasn't worth \_\_\_ lie.  
a) them to hide, to tell, the, telling, the  
b) them hiding, they will tell, a, to tell, a  
c) they were hiding, being told, the, telling, a  
d) they hide, telling, a, telling, the
12. \_\_\_ words about the author himself, the lecturer went on \_\_\_ of his works.  
a) after saying, a few, to speak  
b) saying, few, to speak  
c) having said, few, speaking  
d) to have said, a few, speaking
13. She was looking forward to \_\_\_ the leading part \_\_\_ that she was greatly \_\_\_ at not even \_\_\_ it.  
a) giving, playing, disappointing, being offered  
b) to be given, to play, disappointed, to be offered  
c) being given, to play, disappointed, being offered  
d) give, playing, disappointed, offering
14. Did you remember \_\_\_ the parcel I gave you? —Yes, I remember \_\_\_ it a week ago.  
a) to post, posting  
b) to post, to post  
c) posting, to post  
d) posting, posting
15. You \_\_\_ go and check everything by yourself unless you \_\_\_ it.  
a) would better, want him to do it  
b) had rather, don't want his doing  
c) had better, want him to do it  
d) would rather, don't want him to do
16. The accused men \_\_\_ near the bank during the robbery. It's no, use \_\_\_ the case without direct \_\_\_\_.  
a) deny being somewhere, investigating, evidence  
b) denies to be anywhere, to investigate, evidences  
c) deny being anywhere, investigating, evidence  
d) denies to be somewherej to investigate, evidences
17. You \_\_\_ your children \_\_\_ their own way in the end.  
a) are to let, to go  
b) have letting, going

- c) have to let, go
- d) are to let, gone

18. I suggest \_\_\_ as soon as possible. I \_\_\_ before sunset.

- a) us to start, would rather to come
- b) our starting, had rather come
- c) us starting, would prefer to come
- d) our starting, would rather come

19. I am afraid \_\_\_ to him. What if he really has the power to stop \_\_\_ there, and means \_\_\_ them against me?

- a) to speak, me go, to turn
- b) of speaking, my going, turning
- c) to speak, my going, to turn
- d) speaking, me going, to turn

20. He's always regretted \_\_\_ school so young. He has not got enough qualifications and education. Unfortunately he often receives letters \_\_\_ with "Dear sir, we regret \_\_\_ you that your application was turned down."

- a) leaving, beginning, to inform
- b) to leave, to begin, to inform
- c) leaving, beginning, informing
- d) to leave, to begin, informing

## Modal Verbs

### Obligation and Likelihood

#### Must

#### Exercise 235.

*Open the brackets and fill in the blanks with the appropriate forms of the verbs must, have to or be to.*

1. You \_\_\_ (not tell) him about it. It's a secret.
2. It looks like rain. You \_\_\_ (take) your raincoats.
3. You \_\_\_ (not talk) so loudly here.
4. In his youth he \_\_\_ (work) from morning till night to earn his living.
5. He \_\_\_ (wait) at the station till it stopped raining.
6. The secretary informed us when the manager \_\_\_ (come).
7. They \_\_\_ (leave) on Saturday, but because of the delay with their visas they \_\_\_ (book) tickets for Monday.
8. They \_\_\_ (not tell) him anything about it before they get further instructions.
9. He \_\_\_ (leave) for London that night.
10. \_\_\_ I (do) it all by myself?
11. It was too late to change their plans and they \_\_\_ (put up) with it.
12. You \_\_\_ (not prepare) all this work, I will help you.
13. Stay here till she is free. I think you \_\_\_ (not wait) long.
14. We \_\_\_ (conduct) a series of experiments this week.
15. Remember that we \_\_\_ (be) at this place not later than noon.

#### Exercise 236.

*Choose the correct variant.*



1. His German is very poor. He must (study/be studying/have studied) very hard.  
 2. His German is very good, he must (study/be studying/have studied) very hard.  
 3. His German is considerably improved, he must (study/be studying/have studied) hard during his holiday.  
 4. He must (study/be studying/have been studying) German these two years, his German is rather rich and fluent.  
 5. She must (have taken/be -taking/have been taking) a bath at that moment that's why she did not answer your call.  
 6. She must (be/be being/ have been) at home now, we saw her leaving the office.  
 7. She must (be/be being/have been) at home, she can't go away because there is no one to look after her sick mother.  
 8. You must always (think/be thinking/have thought) twice before you say anything.  
 9. Now he must (think/ be thinking/have thought) of what she has said.  
 10. He knows they are coming. They must (write/be writing/ have written) to him of their arrival in due time.  
 11. She must (play/be playing/have been playing) the piano now.  
 12. The foreigner must (understand/understood/have understood) me, for he nodded his head.  
 13. Where is Sara? I haven't seen her for a long time. — She must (stay/be staying/have stayed) at her friends'. She wanted to spend July with them.  
 14. He must (get/be getting/ have got) all he needed, otherwise he would have come again.  
 15. We must (meet/have met/have been meeting) somewhere before.

**Exercise 237.**

*Open the brackets and use the proper infinitive after the verb must.*

1. Look! All people in the street are going with their umbrellas up. It must (rain).  
 2. He has changed his job. He must (follow) your advice, 3. He must (fall) ill. Otherwise he would have come to the party.  
 4. Where is Michael? He must (be) here by now. — He lives in the country. He must (miss) the train.  
 5. What a dreadful noise! What is the matter? — Our neighbors must (quarrel) again.  
 6. Nobody must (notice) that he was not used to speaking in public.  
 7. The criminal must (be) very careful. He did not leave any fingerprints.  
 8. We are late, I am afraid. Ann must (wait) for us.  
 9. He must (forget) that he promised to come.  
 10. They must (write) a composition for two hours. They must (be) tired.  
 11. You must (misunderstand) me, I did not want to hurt your feelings.  
 12. Nobody must (see) him enter. Everybody startled when he came in.  
 13. I hear someone's steps outside. She must (go).  
 14. You may find him in the garden. He must (read).  
 15. It is impossible to change anything. One must (take) things as they are.

**Exercise 238.**

*Paraphrase the following sentences using the verb must.*

*Example: I am sure they have changed the time. — They must have changed the time.*

1. They are in Greece. I am sure they are enjoying themselves.  
 2. She is an experienced teacher. I am certain she has been working at school for at least twenty years.  
 3. They have probably finished painting the house.  
 4. I feel sure she is at home.  
 5. Probably they have already passed the frontier.  
 6. She is sure he is playing cards with his friends.  
 7. She is not very young, as she seems to be. I think she is nearly forty.  
 8. I think you have visited this place before.  
 9. He has

to do a very urgent task. I feel sure he is working now. 10. He is so absent-minded. I am sure he left the letter unanswered. 11. You know he is a good tennis player. He is no doubt has won this match. 12. I shan't bother you any longer; no doubt you feel tired of my talking after a tiring day. 13. It is clear that they are expecting somebody. 14. She was obviously upset by something; I never saw her *so* nervous. 15. The youth is probably reading something funny. He is smiling all the time.

**Exercise 239,**

*Choose the right variant.*

1. He wants us to obey him. We \_\_\_\_ exactly what he says.
  - a) have to do
  - b) must to do
  - c) are to do
2. Mrs. Sparred \_\_\_\_ very beautiful when she was young. She has a fine face.
  - a) was to be
  - b) must have been
  - c) must be
3. You \_\_\_\_ so late. You should leave after dinner.
  - a) are not to stay
  - b) must not have stayed
  - c) must not stay
4. Something \_\_\_\_\_. He \_\_\_\_\_ at seven,
  - a) must happen, must come
  - b) must have happened, had to come
  - c) must have happened, was to have come
5. Yesterday's rain spoiled my shoes completely and I \_\_\_\_ new ones.
  - a) had to buy
  - b) must have bought
  - c) was to buy
6. Which of them \_\_\_\_ the documents?
  - a) must have brought
  - b) have to bring
  - c) was to bring
7. The only thing he knew for certain was that he \_\_\_\_ them.
  - a) must not meet
  - b) hasn't to meet
  - c) is not to meet
8. You can't come in. You \_\_\_\_ a catching disease like that.
  - a) must not have
  - b) don't have to have
  - c) aren't to have
9. There \_\_\_\_ a garden once.
  - a) was to be
  - b) must have been

- c) must be  
 10. We \_\_\_ in. The weather is changing,  
 a) must go  
 b) must have gone  
 c) are to go

**Exercise 240,**

*Translate into English using the verb must and its equivalents.*

1 Он, должно быть, слышал об этом. 2. Этот дом, должно быть, построен в начале столетия. 3. Вы не должны прекращать работу, пока вы ее не закончите. 4., У них, вероятно, сейчас урок. 5. Не огорчайся, он, должно быть, сделал это случайно. 6. Он, вероятно, сейчас спит. 7, Я ищу этот дом вот уже полчаса и нигде не могу его найти. Должно быть, она дала мне неправильный адрес. 8. Мне не пришлось делать этот чертеж. 9. Он, вероятно, не успел закончить работу к пятнице и был вынужден потратить на нее все выходные, т.,к. ее нужно было закончить к понедельнику. 10 Она, должно быть, не полила сад. Земля очень сухая. 11с Выбора не было, и им пришлось согласиться. 12. Она, должно быть, ждет нас дома. 13. Она должна ждать нас дома. 14 Ей, наверное, не сказали, что мы уже вернулись, 15, Ей пришлось извиниться, хотя это и было неприятно.

**Need**

**Exercise 241.**

*Open the brackets and give the correct form of the verb after need.*

1. The vegetable garden needs (water). 2. The TV needs to be (fix). 3. They need (come) here at three o'clock. 4. The cottage needs to be (repair). 5. She needs (prepare) harder for her exams. 6. The lawn needs (cut). 7. You need (book) a ticket beforehand. 8. Granny needs to be (look after). 9. The walls need to be (paper). 10.1 need (get) this book somewhere.

**Exercise 242.**

*Complete the sentences with the words from the box. Pay attention to the use of the particle to.*

worry	leave
carry	come
talk	help
tell	go
phone	ask

*Example: All is agreed and understood between us,so you needn't\_\_\_about it any more. —*

*All is agreed and understood between us, so you needn't worry about it any more,*

*You don't need\_\_\_there. — You don't need to go there.*

1. You needn't\_\_\_here by yourself. You may send someone else. 2. She doesn't need\_\_\_bags by herself: there are porters at the station. 3. You don't need\_\_\_about her; she is quite able to take care of herself. 4.1 don't need\_\_\_you how important it is. 5.1 needn't \_\_\_him. He will tell me everything himself. 6. You

needn't\_\_\_me again, I never forget my promise. ?. She doesn't need\_\_\_to the library; I have got this book. 8. They needn't\_\_\_for the airport so early; I will give them a lift. 9. I can do it by myself. You needn't\_\_\_ me. 10. You don't need\_\_\_to her. I have already told her everything.

### Exercise 243.

*Choose the right variant.*

1. He says I (mustn't/needn't) do it. He has already done it. 2. You (needn't/mustn't) carry your driving license with you. 3. I can show my student's card, and I (mustn't/needn't) pay to get in. 4. I've hurt my knee and the doctor says I (mustn't/needn't) play football for two weeks. 5. Copies (needn't/mustn't) be done without permission. 6. He is a very discreet person, you (needn't/mustn't) be afraid of telling him anything. 7. He (needn't/mustn't) be said twice. 8. You (needn't/mustn't) answer the question if you don't want to. 9. It's a non-smoking carriage. You (needn't/mustn't) smoke here. 10. She (needn't/mustn't) go to bed so late. Has she forgotten the doctor's instructions?

### Exercise 244,

*Open the brackets and fill in the blanks with either didn't need (to) or needn't have (done).*

1. You\_\_\_(go) into so many details. The report was too long. 2. She got up late because she was alone and she\_\_\_(cook) breakfast for the whole family. 3. We\_\_\_(hurry): she wasn't ready yet. 4. He\_\_\_(return) to the office so he took a taxi and went home. 5. I\_\_\_(take) a bus because Martin gave me a lift. 6. We\_\_\_(come) so early. Now we must wait. 7. She\_\_\_(go) shopping so she went straight home. 8. You\_\_\_(make) this remark, I am sure he felt hurt. 9. She was on holiday and she\_\_\_(wake up) early. 10. He\_\_\_(spend) so much money. Does he remember that he's got children?

### Exercise 245.

*Translate into English using the verb need.*

1. Зря ты сказал Майку об этом. 2. Егэ не надо об этом спрашивать. 3. Мне нужна ваша помощь. 4. Зря ты учил текст наизусть (by heart); учитель его не спрашивал. 5. Вечером температура упала, и он решил, что ему не нужно идти к врачу. 6. Разве ты не видишь, что ему надо подстричься? 7. Зря он отказался от приглашения. 8. Вы купили машину только год назад. Неужели ее надо красить? 9. Мне нужно наладить (fix) компьютер. 10. Джону не надо было ехать в Лондон, и он решил провести выходные в Брайтоне.

### Should/Ought

### Exercise 246.

*Match the parts of the sentences.*

1) My room is in a mess and my friends are coming to visit me a) He should always turn them on in the dark otherwise he may have an accident. tonight.

- 2) You haven't paid your monthly rent yet Friday is the last day you can do it.
- 3) Tom drives the car without headlights.
- 4) Anna's library book is due today.
- 5) I've put on weight recently.
- 6) I am afraid, I was rude to Kate yesterday.
- 7) I've got urgent work and my computer does not work,
- 8) He has a bad toothache,
- 9) I have a test tomorrow clever on fingers but there is a film. TV I've wanted to see so much.
- 10) She has a bad cough but today she goes on smoking.
- b) You ought to go on a diet.
- c) You should ring her up and apologise.
- d) She ought to give up smoking.
- e) He should go to the dentist's.
- f) You ought to put it in order.
- g) You should record the film. Have you got a VCR?
- h) You ought to go to the bank till Friday and pay it
- i) You should phone Nick He's got
- j) She ought to return her books if she doesn't want to pay a fine.

### Exercise 247.

*Read the situations and write sentences with should (shouldn't) have or ought to (ought not to) have,*

*Example: He had a test this morning. — He didn't do it well. He should have studied more last night.*

1. She didn't take a taxi. She was late for the wedding.
2. I didn't eat at home. Now I'm hungry.
3. She bought a TV set last month. Now she regrets doing that. Her children watch it day and night.
4. He signed a contract without reading it thoroughly. Now he has discovered that he has no right to make any amendments there.
5. Mary sold her house. That was a mistake because now she spends a lot of money to rent an apartment.
6. I enjoyed the party last night a lot. Why didn't you come?
7. The driver in front of me stopped suddenly and I smashed into the back of his car. It was not my fault.
8. The boy went out without the doctor's permission. Now he is much worse.
9. When we arrived at the hotel there were no free rooms. We hadn't reserved one.
10. It was not a good idea for Tom and Mary to get married. Now they quarrel all days long.

### Exercise 248.

*Choose the right variant.*

1. She looks bad. She should (be/have been) more careful about her health.
2. You shouldn't (miss/have missed) the chance. It was a brilliant opportunity for

you. 3.1 think the policeman was right. She shouldn't (exceed/have exceeded) the speed. 4.1 ought to (bring/ have taken) the opera glasses. Now I see nothing. 5. It seems to me that he is a hot-temper person and often flies into a rage because of mere trifles. He should (control/ have controlled) his temper. 6. They should (clear/have cleared) up the problem long time ago. 7.1 ought not (to stay/have stayed) there long. The party was a failure. 8. You should (shave/have shaved) this beard of yours!  
9. She should (be/have been) more attentive. Didn't she see a car on the right?  
10. It's a secret. You ought not to (reveal/have revealed) it to anybody.

**Exercise 249.**

*Choose the right variant.*

1. Don't argue with her, you \_\_\_ her age.
  - a) need respect
  - b) have to respect
  - c) ought to respect
  - d) are to respect
2. You \_\_\_ it long ago.
  - a) must do
  - b) should have done
  - c) needn't have done
  - d) are to do
3. This is serious; you \_\_\_ at it.
  - a) haven't to laugh
  - b) should not laugh
  - c) don't have to laugh
  - d) must not have laughed
4. There \_\_\_ an interesting concert last night, but I didn't feel well and \_\_\_ home.
  - a) had to be, had to stay
  - b) should be, was to stay
  - c) must be, ought to stay
  - d) was to be, had to stay
5. According to the rules a football player \_\_\_ the ball with his hands.
  - a) must not touch
  - b) need not touch
  - c) don't have to touch
  - d) must not have touched
6. The situation was dangerous. You \_\_\_ frightened.
  - a) should have got
  - b) must have got
  - c) have to get
  - d) need have got
7. We \_\_\_ to write and thank them for their hospitality.
  - a) must not forget
  - b) must not have forgotten

- c) shouldn't forget
  - d) don't have to forget
8. Why \_\_\_ I know where he is?
- a) should
  - b) must
  - c) need
  - d) ought
9. They \_\_\_ more polite.
- a) need have been
  - b) should have been
  - c) must have been
  - d) are to have been
10. You \_\_\_ so much noise or you'll wake up the baby!
- a) must not make
  - b) must not have made
  - c) needn't have made
  - d) don't have to make

### Exercise 250.

*Open the brackets and fill in the blanks with must, have to, be to, should, need, ought to (in some cases you may have several variants)*

1. He \_\_\_ (not go) to court because the case was dismissed. 2. If I'm late, I'll \_\_\_ (take) a taxi. 3. The young \_\_\_ (respect) the old age. 4. The conversation grew awkward. She felt that something \_\_\_ (do), or else the party would break up. 5. They \_\_\_ (meet) tomorrow, so you \_\_\_ (not make) an appointment to see him. 6. You \_\_\_ (have) a visa to enter a foreign country. 7. You \_\_\_ (try) and be more punctual. 8. Why are you so late? — I \_\_\_ (change) a tyre. 9. You \_\_\_ (not shout), I am not deaf. 10. They \_\_\_ (cross) the English Channel now.

### Exercise 251.

*Translate into English using modal verbs.*

1. Тебе следовало позвонить ему вчера. 2. Ему не следовало говорить с ней таким тоном (tone). Его тон, должно быть, и обидел (hurt) ее. 3. Это должно было произойти. Всем известна его забывчивость (forget-fulness). 4. Она должна была выяснить все до того, как начинать работу. Теперь ей нужно многое переделывать. 5. Ей следовало принести все документы давным-давно. Теперь слишком поздно. 6. Детям нельзя смотреть фильмы ужасов, 7. Мне их проводить (see off)? — Нет, не нужно. Мне придется сделать это самому, 8. В чужой стране необходимо приспособливаться (adapt oneself) к новым условиям жизни, 9. Зря ты купил это пальто. 10. Мы, должно быть, не заметили его в этой толпе (crowd). 11. „Нам не надо было спешить, поэтому мы решили пойти пешком. 12. Почему я должен это делать?

### Ability, Likelihood and Permission

## **Can, Could**

### **Exercise 252.**

*Fill in the blanks with can/can't or be (not) able to in the proper form.*

1. He \_\_\_ speak English rather fluently, but that time he \_\_\_ say a word. 2. He has never \_\_\_ speak in public. 3. I used to \_\_\_ speak German very well. 4. You \_\_\_ marry her, but you \_\_\_ make her love you. 5. I \_\_\_ do it on Friday, but I \_\_\_ do it next week. 6. \_\_\_ you give me a lift to the station, please? 7. I used \_\_\_ eat a kilo of sweets for supper. 8. I have never \_\_\_ ride a bicycle. 9. You \_\_\_ see him at the meeting. He was ill. 10. I'd like \_\_\_ ski very well. 11. Luckily I \_\_\_ find a taxi. 12. I \_\_\_ drive when I was fifteen. 13. I \_\_\_ hear somebody running. 14. He did not want to go there, but we \_\_\_ to persuade him. 15. She sighed. I \_\_\_ feel her hands shaking.

### **Exercise 253.**

*Open the brackets with could (expressing a possibility) or could have (expressing a possibility that did not happen) and make all necessary changes.*

1. A car is pulling up. It could (be) Lucy. 2. He could (get) a credit, but he did not prepare all the documents in time. 3. Why didn't you ask me? I could (do) it for you. 4. He could (be) there tomorrow. 5. They could (be) there yesterday. 6. Why are you so depressed? He could (tell) a lie. 7. You should have told us about your delay. We could (cancel) our meeting. 8. He could (do) it if he tries. 9. Somebody has called on you today. — It could (be) a friend of mine. 10. I think he could (commit) a crime, but he's got an alibi. 11. The train arrives at 11.30. She could (come) at noon. 12. Yesterday I saw him driving at a very high speed. He could (crash).

### **Exercise 254.**

*Express your surprise and disbelief using can/could.*

*A in interrogative sentences.*

*Example: He is working now. — Can/Could he be working now?*

1. He was at the party yesterday. 2. They are in Germany. 3. He has broken his leg. 4. They were sent to prison. 5. She got married. 6. He studies at Cambridge University. 7. She has been practicing the violin for five years. 8. He has made an interesting report. 9. He has won a lot of money in the casino. 10. They will go to the Canaries next summer. 11. He has passed his English exam. 12. She will be forty in June. 13. She is stubborn. 14. He was a cruel man.

*B in negative sentences.*

*Example: He bought a new car. — He can't/ couldn't have bought a car.*

1. You are mistaken. 2. They forgot about the meeting. 3. He is writing a new novel now. 4. She has bought a new fur coat. 5. He had an accident. 6. Mary will invite the Jones to her place for the weekend. 7. They upset our plans. 8. She wastes a lot of time. 9. Mr. Fox is a reliable person. 10. She is making a cruise now.

### **Exercise 255.**

*Translate into English.*



1. Не может быть, чтобы он был дома вчера в это время. 2. Неужели он сказал вам об этом? 3. Возможно, он и заходил к ним, когда был в Москве. 4. Он мог бы сделать это, но не захотел. 5. Неужели он отказался ехать туда? 6. Не может быть, чтобы он спал сейчас. 7. Не может быть, чтобы они уехали, не попрощавшись с нами. 8. Не может быть, чтобы она вам так ответила. 9. Он мог бы приехать завтра. 10. Не может быть, что он столкнулся (collide) с другой машиной. Он такой осторожный водитель. 11. Вряд ли он забыл о своем обещании, я напоминала ему об этом вчера. 12. Он не мог прочитать эту книгу так быстро, она слишком трудна для него. 13. Они смогли бы подняться на вершину, но им помешала погода. 14. Вряд ли они поженятся; они слишком разные люди. 15. Разве мог кто-нибудь подумать, что он выиграет матч?

### **May, Might**

#### **Exercise 256.**

*Paraphrase the following sentences using the verb may /might.*

1. Under the law you are allowed to make one photocopy for your personal use but you can't make multiple copies. 2. This is possibly the reason why they have refused to join us. 3. Perhaps I will have to take her to hospital; it is possible she has broken her arm in the accident. 4. It is possible he did not have her phone number. 5. When the World Cup was shown on TV, I was allowed to stay up late and watch it. 6. Perhaps your friend will help you, but I don't believe it. 7. Maybe they did not know that the problem was so urgent. 8. Would you mind my smoking here? 9. Why didn't you come? I needed your help badly. 10. Perhaps she has made a mistake, but I am not sure of it. She is a very punctual person.

#### **Exercise 257.**

*Fill in the blanks with may /might or can/ could and make all necessary changes.*

1. You\_\_\_(warn) me about it beforehand. 2. The weather is changing. It\_\_\_(start) raining. 3. No, he\_\_\_ (not hear) your name. We tried to speak in a whisper. 4. He\_\_\_(not hear) your name. That's why he did not say anything. 5. She \_\_\_ (not notice) us. We were standing too far away. 6. She\_\_\_(not notice) us though we were standing beside her. 7.\_\_\_I use your name as a referee? 8. She\_\_\_(not hear) the news, that's why she looks as if nothing had happened. 9. She\_\_\_(not hear) the news, nobody\_\_\_tell her about it. 10. The professor says that I\_\_\_(rewrite) the essay. 11.\_\_\_I use your phone? 12. He\_\_\_(help) them when they were in trouble. 13.\_\_\_he (say) it? No, it's not like him. He is a man of few words.

#### **Exercise 258.**

*Choose the right variant.*

1. I don't like the way you study. I think you\_\_\_harder!
- a) might have worked
  - b) might work
  - c) could work

- d) could have worked
2. Let's wait a little. He \_\_\_\_.
- a) may have come  
b) could have come  
c) may come  
d) might have come
3. She \_\_\_\_ of the plan herself. Somebody has suggested it to her.
- a) can't have thought  
b) may not have thought  
c) can't think  
d) may not think
4. They \_\_\_\_ our telegram, that's why they did not meet us.
- a) couldn't have received  
b) can't have received  
c) may not have received  
d) may not receive
5. She \_\_\_\_ my letter! — Don't be so angry with her.  
She \_\_\_\_ it by mistake,
- a) may not read, may do  
b) cannot read, can do  
c) might not have read, can't have done  
d) can't have read, might not have done
6. He \_\_\_\_ it. I don't believe you.
- a) is not able to say  
b) might not say  
c) can't have said  
d) might not have said

**Exercise 259.**

*Fill in the blanks with the modal verbs making necessary changes (you may have several variants).*

1. He is in the garden. He \_\_\_\_ (read) a newspaper in the summerhouse. 2. Her son \_\_\_\_ (get) into trouble yesterday. I've seen him today and he looked quite happy and gay. 3. I don't remember him well but it seems to me he \_\_\_\_ (be) in charge of the Finance department last year.
4. He \_\_\_\_ already (get) used to driving on the left. He has been living in London for a year. 5. He \_\_\_\_ (receive) an emergency call, that's why he is out. 6. They \_\_\_\_ (not take up) this problem. It has been already solved. 7. Where is Mr. Black? — He \_\_\_\_ (receive) a foreign delegation.
- They \_\_\_\_ (come) at two o'clock. 8. Why haven't the Smiths arrived yet? — They \_\_\_\_ (lose) their way. They don't know the road well. 9. You \_\_\_\_ (introduce) me to your wife long ago. 10. He \_\_\_\_ (buy) a new car. He is deeply in debt. 11. He \_\_\_\_ (buy) a new car, but I am not sure. 12. They \_\_\_\_ already (arrive). Look, the windows are open. 13. Where is John? — He \_\_\_\_ (smoke) in the corridor. 14. I think for your children's sake

you\_\_\_ (do) it. 15. You\_\_\_(buy) this book for me. You know I have wanted to have it. 16. A wife\_\_\_(obey) her husband, the Bible says. 17. You,\_\_\_(wait) for me, I knew the road well and found my way myself. 18. Judging by his papers on the writing table he\_\_\_(work) for several hours.

19. \_\_\_it (be) Nick? He has changed a lot. 20. They\_\_\_ (not know) of the plane's delay, otherwise they did not come at 2 o'clock.

### **Exercise 260.**

*Find and correct the mistakes if any.*

1. I must not dress in my best. When I came, everybody was wearing jeans and T-shirts. 2. He must have known that she needed his help. 3. He had to have an accident in the thick fog. 4. You should phone her long ago. I am sure she is looking forward to your call. 5. With your knowledge of the language you may read the article. 6. I may not imagine Mary teaching students. She used to be so impatient. — You know time changes people. She is able to become quite different. 7. I am sure you might have done it much better. You did not try. 8. I was so angry, I must have thrown my boot at him. 9. May you do me a favour, please? 10. May I ask you to do me a favour, please?

### **Exercise 261.**

*Translate into English using the modal verbs.*

1. Что здесь происходит? Не могли вы бы вы сказать, в чем дело? — Должно быть, полиция ловит опасного преступника (criminal), и поэтому здесь нельзя пройти. 2. Он мог бы объяснить мне с самого начала, как это важно. 3. Тебе следует поторопиться. Мы можем опоздать. 4. Какой скучный фильм я посмотрел! Не стоило ходить в кино, я мог бы посмотреть что-нибудь по телевизору. 5. Тебе следовало бы сесть на диету (go on a diet) еще полгода назад. Посмотри на себя! Ты поправилась (gain) на 3 килограмма. Тебе нельзя есть сладкое. 6. Неужели она потеряла мой номер телефона? 7. Почему он молчит (keep silence)? — Может быть, он не расслышал ваш вопрос. Не могли бы вы его повторить? 8. Ты должен уважать (respect) своих родителей. 9. Наверное, он сегодня не придет. Уже восемь часов, а он должен был прийти в семь. 10. Вряд ли они уже вернулись. Они там впервые и могут задержаться (stay long).

## **Test 6**

*Choose the right variant.*

1. "They\_\_\_an excellent vacancy last week. You \_\_\_an opportunity of getting it," he reproached me.

- a) had, mustn't miss
- b) have had, might not have missed it
- c) had, shouldn't have missed
- d) were having, couldn't miss

2. He had to earn\_\_\_living at\_\_\_an early age,\_\_\_?

- a) \_\_\_, such, hadn't he

- b) his, such, didn't he  
 c) himself, so, hadn't he  
 d) to, so, didn't he
3. We\_\_\_a camera because we never\_\_\_a chance to use it.  
 a) might not have taken, had  
 b) should not have taken, have had  
 c) needn't have taken, had  
 d) mustn't have taken, had had
4. The line is busy; somebody\_\_\_on the telephone now.  
 a) should be speaking  
 b) should have been speaking  
 c) must be speaking  
 d) can't be speaking
5. You\_\_\_this! See how\_\_\_she is.  
 a) ought not to say, distressing  
 b) ought not to have said, distressed  
 c) won't be able to say, distressing  
 d) cannot have said, distressed
6. He says that nothing\_\_\_, because it is too\_\_\_. But I don't believe a single word\_\_\_; they\_\_\_us.  
 a) should do, lately, of him, mustn't have failed  
 b) can't be done, late, of his, oughtn't fail  
 c) mustn't be done, lately, of him, shouldn't have failed  
 d) can be done, late, of his, can't have failed
7. I managed to come here at half past six. But I\_\_\_. They\_\_\_.  
 a) needn't have hurried, had already left  
 b) needn't hurry, have already left  
 c) mustn't have hurried, had already left  
 d) shouldn't hurry, have already left
8. If she doesn't take care of\_\_\_, she\_\_\_have a nervous breakdown and\_\_\_to hospital.  
 a) hers, may, should go  
 b) her, can, need to go  
 c) herself, may, may have to go  
 d) herself, must, must go
9. He\_\_\_his wallet himself, it\_\_\_.  
 a) might lose, couldn't be stolen  
 b) may have lost, can't have been stolen  
 c) could have lost, must not have been stolen  
 d) ought to lose, shouldn't be stolen
10. You\_\_\_a message at least! We\_\_\_for two hours.  
 a) should send, waited  
 b) must have sent, were waiting  
 c) could send, have been waiting

- d) might have sent, had been waiting
11. The only trouble is that I \_\_\_ my exams in spring and \_\_\_ them now.
- a) couldn't have taken, must have  
 b) couldn't take, must have  
 c) mustn't have taken, must have had  
 d) can't take, must have had
12. The plane \_\_\_ at 5 a.m. and in this hurry-scurry she \_\_\_ the tickets on the table.
- a) had to take off, can leave  
 b) was to take off, must have left  
 c) was to take off, needn't leave  
 d) must have taken off, shouldn't leave
13. Why \_\_\_ he take the scandal on himself? It is not
- a) must, fairly  
 b) may, fair  
 c) should, fair  
 d) could, fairly
14. You \_\_\_ to him. His information is \_\_\_.
- a) shouldn't listen, misled  
 b) needn't have listened, misleading  
 c) can't have listened, misled  
 d) mustn't have listened, misleading
15. It is not worth \_\_\_ to \_\_\_ bed if he \_\_\_ at five.
- a) to go, \_\_\_, have to get up  
 b) going, the, must have got up  
 c) to have gone, the, is to get up  
 d) going, \_\_\_, doesn't have to get up
16. They have made me \_\_\_ that I \_\_\_ selfish about it.
- a) think, may have been  
 b) to think, must be  
 c) thinking, might have been  
 d) thought, should have been
17. It \_\_\_ late when I \_\_\_ home; there were no people in the street.
- a) must have been, was going back  
 b) must be, am going  
 c) can't have
18. You \_\_\_ worry, you \_\_\_ always rely on me in this matter.
- a) must not, need  
 b) need not, may  
 c) can, need not  
 d) should, must
19. You \_\_\_ this device. It \_\_\_ dangerous.
- a) couldn't have touched, may be  
 b) must not touch, may be

- c) shouldn't have touched, ought to be
  - d) needn't touch, must have been
20. I \_\_\_ my job. I \_\_\_ you before.
- a) needn't have put off, should ask
  - b) shouldn't have put off, need to ask
  - c) needn't have put off, should have asked
  - d) shouldn't put off, should ask

## Subjunctives and Conditionals

### Exercise 262,

*Use the subjunctive mood in the following sentences.*

*Example: I will be glad to meet you again. — / would be glad to meet you again.*

1. I will apologize to him for being late. 2. Everybody will be glad to go there. 3. I'll eat something sweet. 4. It does not make much difference. 5. I won't go to Egypt in summer. 6. She will do her best to improve the situation. 7. He will give you a different answer. 8. Nobody blames them. 9. Do you find it inconvenient? 10. He will warn you of the danger. 11. A true friend will never fail you. 12. They will accept the invitation for Sunday. 13. I will never agree to it. 14. A wise man will find a way out of the situation. 15. It will be interesting to find out who is right.

### Exercise 263.

*Open the brackets and use the subjunctive mood.*

*Example: Why didn't you tell me? I (close) the window long ago. — / would have closed the window long ago.*

1. In your place I (arrange) everything yesterday. 2. At that time he (take) the necessary steps. 3. Why did you wash up? I (do) it myself. 4. She (buy) the dress, but she had no money. 5. He (advise) them what to do, but he couldn't get in touch with them. 6. We (go) to the country rain or shine, but he was busy last weekend. 7. I (come) to see him last week, but I got ill and had to stay in bed. 8. It (be) important then but not now. 9. They (take) a taxi, but there was none. 10. Why didn't you ask them to discuss your problem then? They (not postpone) it.

### Exercise 264.

*Choose the right variant.*

1. I would (have brought/bring) the book, but you did not tell me you needed it. 2. It would (be/have been) wise of you to consult a dentist twice a year. 3. I think nobody would (object/have objected) to having a party tomorrow. 4. I did not know that it was so important for you. I would (do/have done) it long ago. 5. In your place I wouldn't (argue/have argued) with her yesterday. She is your boss. 6. Last year he wouldn't (say/have said) so of John. I, I wouldn't (worry/have worried) about it now. Everything will clear up soon. 8. We would (stay/have stayed) for an hour, but it is rather late. 9. We did not know that we would come

to the lake. We would (take/ have taken) our rods. 10.1 would (go/have gone) to sea, but my father wanted me to be a lawyer.

### **Exercise 265.**

*Open the brackets in the conditional sentences making necessary changes.*

*A Example: If he (come) tomorrow, he will help us. — If he comes tomorrow, he will help us.*

1. If you (put) salt on ice, it will melt. 2. If he (leave) now, he will miss the rush hour. 3. Provided that she (service) the car, we'll be able to drive to the country. 4. Unless he (do) his homework, he'll stay at home. 5. Providing that we (get up) early, we'll reach the place of destination in time. 6. They will let us know if they (see) him.

*B Example: If he (come) tomorrow, he would help us. — If he came tomorrow, he would help us.*

1. If you met the president, what you (do)? 2. If he (live) nearer, we would see each other more often. 3.1 might go for a walk if the weather (be) nice. 4.1 would call him up if he (come) tomorrow. 5. If I were as young as you are, I (sail) in a boat round the world. 6.1 would go skiing if there (be) more snow. 7. She would play tennis if it (be) not so hot. 8. If I (be) in his shoes, I wouldn't invite the Browns. 9. If we (not have) to study, we would go out tonight. 10. Where you (go) if you were on leave?

*C Example: If he (come) yesterday, he would have helped us. — If he had come yesterday, he would have helped us.*

1. She (notice) this mistake if she had been more attentive. 2.1 might have gone on an excursion with you if I (know) about it beforehand. 3. If we (know) that you were there, we would have called on you. 4. If I had known of his arrival, I (meet) him. 5. Nobody told me about your trouble. I would have helped you if I (know) about it. 6. If you had tried your best, you (get) the job. 7. If he (not work) late, he would have caught his bus. 8. If Mary had agreed to sit in for us, we (go) to the movie yesterday. 9. He (pass) his exams well if he had studied hard. 10. Я would have prepared everything yesterday if I (receive) your message on Monday.

### **Exercise 266.**

*Open the brackets using the proper form of the subjunctive mood.*

1. He failed to appreciate our difficulty. He (behave) differently if he (realize) the situation. 2. He often asks me about you. If you (come) to see him tonight, he (be) delighted. 3. Why did you leave so hurriedly? If you (stay) there for another week, he (finish) your portrait. 4. Why do you always talk in such a scornful manner? If I (be) in your shoes, I (not be) so rude. 5. If you (smoke) less, you (feel) much better. 6.1 think that if you (tell) them that our invitation still stands, they (give) it another thought. 7. She (do) her best to save the situation if she (be) there but she was on business then. 8. Where you (go) if you (be) ел leave now? 9. How about, going to Spain? The weather (be) perfect if we (go) now, and we (be) able to go water-skiing. 10. If Jack (come) home earlier last night, he (call) you back. 11. If you (not complain) so much then,

everyone (be) satisfied and she (not) be fired. 12, What you (reply) if somebody (apologize) to you?

### **Exercise 287.**

*Change the following sentences according to the example.*

*Example: If he came to see us, we would have a good time. — Should he come to see us, we would have a good time. If he had come to see us yesterday, we would have had a good time. — Had he come to see us yesterday, we would have had a good time,*

1, If I had known who was invited, I would have never come, 2. You would hardly recognize her if you met her. 3, If a passer-by hadn't helped us, we would not have found the way. 4. Mother would have had a short rest if the sick boy had gone to sleep. 5. We wouldn't have made friends with them if we hadn't stayed at the same hotel. 6. It wouldn't have been so cold in the morning if the wind had stopped blowing. 7. Peter would accept your invitation if he were in London. 8. They wouldn't have quarreled if they both had not been so nervous. 9. If they didn't like each other, they wouldn't spend so much time together. 10. If it snowed, the weather would get warmer.

### **Exercise 268.**

*Open the brackets and put the verbs into the correct form. Pay attention to the adverbial modifiers of time.*

1. If he (book) tickets yesterday, he (lie) on the beach now. 2. She (not forgive) him if she (not be) his mother. 3. If you (drink) less last night, you (not feel) so bad today. 4. If he (be) cleverer, he (not behaved) so foolishly yesterday. 5. If I (know) English well, I (translate) the article long ago. 6. I (take) part in the last competition if I (be) younger. 7. If he (do) work yesterday, he (be) free today. 8. If you (take) into account his behavior then, you (not have) so much trouble now. 9. You (may be) a star now if you (be offered) the part in the film then. 10. If she (not decide) to change a job last year, she (go) to China next month. 11. He (not go) to sleep over that book if it (not be) so dull. 12. If he (be) a good musician, he (take part) in yesterday's concert.

### **Exercise 269.**

*Translate into English.*

1. Ты бы расстроился (be upset), если бы я не пришел? 2. Будь он осторожнее, он бы не упал. 3. Если бы он не приехал на машине встретить нас, нам бы самим пришлось нести свои вещи. 4. Ты бы пошла куда-нибудь вечером, если бы он тебя пригласил? 5. Мы бы поехали сегодня в бассейн, если бы вы позвонили вчера вечером, 6. Если бы он мог дать положительный (positive) ответ, он бы давно это сделал. 7. Я бы на твоём месте не стал бы поднимать такой шум (raise a clamor), 8- Если бы ты принял его предложение, ты бы давно работал в хорошей фирме. 9. Будь я на вашем месте, я бы пошел пораньше, чтобы застать его. 10. Если бы он вел машину осторожнее, никакой бы аварии не произошло, 11 Не сломай он ногу, он бы выиграл турнир (tournament) . 12. Никто бы не обвинил (blame), тебя, если бы ты вел себя по-другому.



**Exercise 270.**

*Open the brackets and use the correct form of the subjunctive mood,*

1. She was breathing heavily as if she (run) a long distance. 2. It seemed as though he (know) it long ago, 3. She looked at him as if she (see) a ghost. 4. He looked as if he (want) to say something but (be) afraid to begin his speech. 5. She behaved as though nothing (happen), 6. It seemed as if he never (hear) of it before. 7. They met as though they (see) each other for the first time. 8. They talked as if they never (meet) before, 9. They talked as if they (know) each other for ever so many years and it (not be) the first time they met. 10. He nodded slowly as if he (agree) to her suggestion but she knew he would never do it. 11. Her eyes were swollen and had shadows as if she (not sleep). 12. They stared at each other in silence, and it was as if they (listen) for distant footsteps. 13. He speaks French as if he (be) a Frenchman. 14. Nothing had changed in the room but it seemed as though somebody (be) there, 15. She looked very tired as if she (work) from early morning till late at night.

**Exercise 271.**

*Translate into English,*

1. Она счастлива, посмотри на нее. Она выглядит так, как будто помолодела на несколько лет. 2. У него было такое чувство, как будто его обманули (deceive). 3. Взрыв (explosion) был очень сильным. Стало светло как днем. 4. Он выглядит так, как будто он победитель. 5. Она не остановилась, как будто не слышала, что ее зовут. 6. Вы выглядите усталым, как будто давно не отдыхали. 7. Он часто смотрел на часы, как будто спешил куда-то. 8. Она смотрит на мир, как будто он принадлежит ей. 9. Он уставился на меня, как будто я сказал что-то не то.

**Exercise 272.**

*Choose the right variant and translate the sentences into Russian.*

1. She wished at that moment she (had not sent/did not send) for him. 2. "I wish I (had been/were) there with you," he said with deep regret. 3. She says she wishes I (had been/were) a thousand miles away. 4. I wish she (had not looked/did not look) so sad. 5. The professor wishes I (had studied/studied) harder. 6. We wished he (had not come/did not come) so late yesterday. 7. I wish you (had seen/saw) the play. It was a great success. 8. I wish they (had introduced/introduced) their friends to me at the party. 9. She wishes her father (hadn't known/ didn't know) it. 10. He wished they (hadn't noticed/didn't notice) his embarrassment.

**Exercise 273.**

*Paraphrase the following sentences using the subjunctive mood after the verb wish.*

Example: It's a pity you are so busy these days. — *I wish you were not so busy these days.*

1. It's a pity we won't be able to reach the village before sunset. 2. My friend regrets not having told you all at once. 3. It's a pity that you did not send your son for one of us last night. 4. What a pity you are leaving so soon. 5. Unfortunately, he did not receive the answer before Christmas. 6. I am sorry I made you upset by bringing such depressing news. 7. The patient was sorry that he had not fulfilled all the doctor's instructions. 8. She was sorry she had no money to buy a toy for her son. 9. They were disappointed that they had not persuaded her. 10. It's a pity we are not so young as you are.

**Exercise 274.**

*Translate into English.*

1. Как жаль, что он пришел так поздно. Мы не успели поговорить о наших проблемах, 2. Как жаль, что он не разработал этот проект. 3. Как жаль, что нам придется так скоро уехать. 4. Обидно, что вы не дождались его прихода. 5. Я теперь жалею, что не послушался его совета. 6. Обидно, что вас не поняли. 7. Жаль, что вы упустили такой шанс. 8. Обидно, что ей придется отказаться от такого предложения. 9. Как жаль, что он работает допоздна. 10. Он пожалел, что пришел и привел с собой друга. 11. Я бы очень хотела быть сейчас в Лондоне. 12. Как бы мне хотелось говорить по-английски так же хорошо, как он.

**Exercise 275.**

*Choose the correct variant.*

1. It was desirable that we (started/start) at dawn. 2. I insist that she regularly (should inform/would inform) us of her whereabouts. 3. It was suggested that they (cover/would cover) the distance in very short time. 4. The lawyer demanded that the prisoner (would be freed/ be freed). 5. The coach insisted that the athlete (should start/starting) training in a month. 6. The chairman proposed that the question (being put/be put) to vote. 7. Why do you insist that he (do/would do) the task on his own? 8. It is necessary that the sick man (to stay/ stay) in bed for a fortnight. 9. It is not advisable that the children (were left/be left) alone. 10. It is important that Mr. Leeds (would give/should give) a speech.

**Exercise 276.**

*Paraphrase the following using the Subjunctive mood.*

1. It is advisable for you to see a doctor before going to the South. 2. He had to suggest her taking part in the competition. 3. The doctor recommended her to keep to a diet. 4. The captain ordered everybody to leave the deck. 5. The majority of the committee insisted on the matter being postponed. 6. It was suggested the celebration being put off. 7. It is necessary for the child to spend more time out of doors. 8. The demonstrators demand the increase in prices. 9. It is quite uncommon for them to be against such a reasonable suggestion. 10. They advised her to find another job. 11. It is necessary for you to hand in an application not later than a week. 12. He insisted on being given a chance to prove his point of view. 13. It is very important for them to see the purpose of their work. 14. They

requested for the goods to be delivered in time. 15. It is desirable for the applicant to have his address and telephone number in case the management may want him.

### **Exercise 277.**

*Translate into English using the subjunctive mood.*

1. «Желательно, чтобы вы повторили (revise) все слова перед контрольной работой», — сказал преподаватель. 2. Он настаивал на том, чтобы ему передали всю дополнительную информацию. 3. Я требую, чтобы он ушел. 4. Комиссия предложила включить его в список. 5. Мы предлагаем им сделать перерыв. 6. Детям необходимо спать на открытом воздухе. 7. Вы должны наконец настоять, чтобы он возвращался домой вовремя. 8. Комитету рекомендовано разработать новую программу. 9. Председатель (chairman) предложил отложить вопрос. 10. Профессор требует от нас сдавать работы в напечатанном виде. 11. Предлагаю сделать это упражнение сейчас. 12. Погода хорошая, и я рекомендую всем прогуляться до станции пешком.

### **Exercise 278.**

*Find and correct the mistakes if any.*

1. I cannot give him such a job. I wish he were light-minded. 2. It was desirable that all participants came on time. 3. If he would go there, I did not come. 4. He insisted that everybody would sign the paper. 5. He looks upon the cottage as if it is his property. 6. If he had come a bit earlier, he would have time to say goodbye to you. 7. She wished she had never mentioned his name. 8. Was it so important that he be present? 9. Should he could do it, he would do it. 10. I demand that he is taken to hospital immediately.

### **Test 7**

Choose the right variant.

1. \_\_\_ beforehand, we \_\_\_ the catastrophe.

- a) did we know, would prevent
- b) would we know, had prevented
- c) had we known, would have prevented
- d) should we know, had prevented

2. I don't know how \_\_\_ him. I wish I \_\_\_ his name.

- a) address, did not know
- b) to address, knew
- c) addressing, would know
- d) to address, should know

3. I look forward to \_\_\_ a rest. I \_\_\_ as if my head \_ splitting.

- a) having, feel, were
- b) having, feel myself, were
- c) have, had felt, were
- d) have, am feeling, is

4. He couldn't remember his mother\_\_\_\_, But would everything\_\_\_\_\_if mother hadn't died?
- dying, be, differently
  - to die, have been, as different
  - dying, have been, different
  - die, has been, so different
5. "Oh, Mary," she said. "I wish you\_\_\_with us, for we had\_\_\_fun."
- had been, such a
  - were, so\_\_\_
  - would be, so a
  - had been, such\_\_\_
- 6.1 remember his colour\_\_\_away in a moment and he seemed\_\_\_as if he\_\_\_.
- go, breathing, had been running
  - to go, to breathe, ran
  - going, to breathe, had been running
  - have gone, to be breathing, was running
7. The vase is beautiful. You\_\_\_\_\_to match\_\_\_ you\_\_\_\_\_.
- wouldn't find, another, unless, had tried
  - wouldn't have found, the other, if, would have tried
  - shouldn't find, the other, unless, tried
  - wouldn't find, another, if, tried
8. If you\_\_\_the medicine the doctor prescribed you, you\_\_\_\_\_now.
- had taken, would feel, much better
  - took, would feel, much more well
  - would take, would feel yourself, much more better
  - had taken, would have felt, much more good
- 9.1 remember it so\_\_\_as if it\_\_\_only yesterday.
- clear, happened
  - clearly, had happened
  - clear, would have happened
  - clearly, would happen
10. If you\_\_\_the article I recommended you, you \_\_\_how\_\_\_such questions.
- had read, had known, to answer
  - read, would know, the answer
  - would have read» would know, answer
  - had read, would know, to answer
- 11.1 must be off now. If it\_\_\_not so\_\_\_, I\_\_\_a little longer.
- were, lately, would stay
  - were, late, would stay
  - had been, late, would have stayed
  - wouldn't be, lately, stayed
- 12.\_\_\_I\_\_\_the story from his own lips I\_\_\_ that he was capable of\_\_\_action.
- if, had heard, would never believe, such
  - unless, had heard, would have never believed, such an

- c) in case, have heard, would never believe, so an  
d) provided, had heard, would have never believed, such
13. In order to make our demands effective and to get the authorities \_\_\_ them we suggested that there \_\_\_ no return to work today.
- a) to fulfil, be  
b) fulfil, should be  
c) fulfilled, would be  
d) fulfilling, were
14. I am going to have my kitchen \_\_\_. It is necessary that every crack \_\_\_ covered; also between \_\_\_ floor and \_\_\_ door.
- a) to repair, will be, the. \_\_\_  
b) to be repaired, is, \_\_\_. the  
c) repaired, should be, the , the  
d) being repaired, be, \_\_\_, \_\_\_
15. John demanded that Andrew \_\_\_ to the house with him to. \_\_\_ tea.
- a) would return, \_\_\_  
b) returned, the  
c) return, \_\_\_  
d) should return, the
16. She wished he \_\_\_ what he \_\_\_ to say, and let
- a) would say, has, her to go  
b) said, had, she go  
c) had said, would have, she going  
d) said, had, her go
17. He thought how hard the wind \_\_\_ and how the cold sharp rain \_\_\_ in his face at that moment, if he \_\_\_ at home.
- a) was blowing, would be beating, were not sitting, comfortably  
b) is blowing, will be beating, is not sitting, comfortable  
c) blew, beat, was not sitting, comfortably  
d) had blown, had beaten, were not sitting, comfortable
18. I \_\_\_ to your place with pleasure \_\_\_ nothing \_\_\_ me,
- a) will come, unless, prevented  
b) will come, if, prevents  
c) would come, unless, prevented  
d) would have come, providing, would prevent
19. When they \_\_\_ lunch he suggested that they \_\_\_ a stroll to \_\_\_ Luxembourg museum.
- a) have finished, the, should have, the  
b) finished, \_\_\_, had, \_\_\_  
c) would have finished, a, would have, \_\_\_  
d) had finished, \_\_\_, have, the
20. You never did anything \_\_\_ to \_\_\_. If you \_ you \_\_\_ more support now.
- a) well, someone, did, would have  
b) good, anyone, did, would have had

- c) well, anyone, had done, would have had
- d) good, anyone, had done, would have

## The Preposition

### Exercise 279.

*Fill in the blanks with the prepositions of time in, on, at where necessary.*

1. I usually finish work early \_\_\_ Friday. I don't work \_\_\_ the weekend. 2. Let's meet \_\_\_ five \_\_\_ Sunday, July 14. 3. I am busy \_\_\_ the moment. Come \_\_\_ ten minutes' time, please. 4. There was a boat race in Southampton \_\_\_ Easter Day. A lot of people usually come there \_\_\_ Easter to see the race. 5. Can you imagine what the world will be \_\_\_ the year 2100? 6. When will you have your holiday, \_\_\_ winter or \_\_\_ summer? — I'll have it late \_\_\_ August. 7. We started off \_\_\_ midnight and reached the place of destination \_\_\_ twelve hours \_\_\_ noon. 8. I was in France in 1997. \_\_\_ that time I was working as a waiter in a small cafe. 9. \_\_\_ the age of sixteen he left his parents' house. 10. \_\_\_ her wedding day she got up. \_\_\_ dawn. 11. You must come and have tea with us \_\_\_ next Thursday. Are you free \_\_\_ Thursday?

12. I received a lot of presents \_\_\_ my birthday. 13. Leonardo da Vinci lived and worked \_\_\_ the Middle Ages. 14. \_\_\_ every day he got up early \_\_\_ the morning and went to bed late \_\_\_ night. 15. \_\_\_ the 19<sup>th</sup> century many people died of cholera and smallpox.

### Exercise 280.

*Use in, on, at, by, until if necessary.*

1. Students usually have their exams \_\_\_ the end of each term. 2. The book was rather simple. I read it \_\_\_ a day. 3. He switched on the radio and TV \_\_\_ the same time. 4. It was difficult to persuade her but \_\_\_ the end she agreed to our proposal. 5. He is very punctual, his lectures always begin \_\_\_ time. 6. She nearly forgot about their meeting, but fortunately she remembered it \_\_\_ time. 7- They will be working \_\_\_ 7 o'clock today. 8. Hurry up! I'm afraid, \_\_\_ the time we get to the station, the train will have already left. 9. Have you finished translating the book? — Not yet. I hope to finish it \_\_\_ the end of the month. 10. \_\_\_ what time did he come? — He came late \_\_\_ the evening, \_\_\_ midnight, if I am not mistaken. 11. Boogie-woogie became popular in the United States \_\_\_ the 1950s. 12. They came back \_\_\_ sunset, tired and hungry. 13. They went to the canteen \_\_\_ lunchtime. 14. \_\_\_ the past he used to be a skilled surgeon. 15. I am sure, he will be well again \_\_\_ several days.

### Exercise 281.

*Fill in with for, since during, while,*

1. I've known her \_\_\_ last October. 2. I have been learning English \_\_\_ five years. 3. The film was boring and he went to sleep \_\_\_ the film. 4. He got acquainted with a very beautiful girl \_\_\_ the holiday. 5. He got acquainted with a very beautiful girl \_\_\_ he was on holiday. 6. She worked in a cafe \_\_\_ her holiday. She worked there \_\_\_ two months. 7. He has been playing the violin \_\_\_ eight years.

8. I often read newspapers \_\_\_ a meal. 9. It happened \_\_\_ they were asleep. 10. You'll have to be quiet \_\_\_ the performance. 11. Were there any telephone calls \_\_\_ I was out? 12. Where have you been? I have been waiting for you \_\_\_ two hours, \_\_\_ 12 o'clock! I've drunk three cups of coffee \_\_\_ that time. If I had had a book, I would have read it \_\_\_ I was waiting for you. 13. There are lots of people in the streets \_\_\_ the carnival. 14. She has been living in the country \_\_\_ the beginning of the summer. 15. He hurt his ankle \_\_\_ he ' Was playing basketball yesterday.

### Exercise 282.

*Fill in the blanks with prepositions of place at, in, on.*

1. „ Excuse me, can you tell me where the concert hall is? — Turn \_\_\_ the right \_\_\_ the roundabout. It's \_\_\_ the corner of the square. 2. We spent our holiday \_\_\_ the south coast of France. 3. He lives \_\_\_ the tenth floor \_\_\_, the centre of the city. 4. There was a black spot \_\_\_ the back of the letter. 5. There were no vacant chairs to sit \_\_\_, so he sat \_\_\_ the armchair, \_\_\_ the corner. 6. Do you know that Englishmen drive \_\_\_\_\_ the left? 7. Look, how many stars there are \_\_\_ the sky! 8. I'm going to the concert \_\_\_ the Central Concert Hall tomorrow. 9. The delegation was met \_\_\_ the airport. 10. I don't want to sit \_\_\_ the back row, let's sit \_\_\_ the front. 11. At first it seemed that there wasn't his name \_\_\_ the list, but then he found it \_\_\_ the bottom of the page. 12. \_\_\_ my way home I saw fjelen. She was standing \_\_\_\_\_ the bus stop. 13. She did not want anybody to see her, so she sat \_\_\_ the back of the car. 14. We were \_\_\_\_\_ the restaurant yesterday. There were a lot of delicious things \_\_\_ the menu. 15. Where did you meet? — We met \_\_\_, the party \_\_\_ the Greens'.

### Exercise 283.

*Choose the right variant.*

1. There are too many people (on/in/by) the bus. I want to go (on/in/by) a taxi. 2. Did you go there (on/in/ by) foot or (on/in/by) car? — I went (on/in/by) Peter's bicycle. 3. It is too hot to be (on/in/by) the sun at noon. We have been sitting (on/in/by) the beach for three hours. Let's sit (on/in/by) the shade. 4. We travelled (on/in/by) 9.45 plane. There was a good lunch (on/in/by) the plane. 5. She didn't want to go (on/in/by) underground, so they came (on/in/by) a taxi. 6. Have you ever ridden (on/in/ by) the elephant? 7. Don't stay (on/in/by) the rain! Come in! 8. The children were afraid to sit (on/in/by) the dark. They came into the dining room and sat (on/in/by) their mother. 9. The rule is written (on/in/by) page twelve. 10. Where shall we hang the picture? — (On/In/By) the window. 11. I was too tired to talk to somebody (on/in/ by) the train. 12. It was an awful trip. My friend lent me his car, but after we'd been (on/in/by) the car for a few hours, it broke down. We started to go back (on/in/by) foot, but a van-driver stopped and took us (on/in/by) his van. We came back home at dawn.

### Exercise 284.

*Fill in the blanks with in, into, to, at, on, out of, from, off where necessary.*

1. He took the wallet \_\_\_ of his pocket, opened it and put the cheque \_\_\_ it. 2. He took his suitcase \_\_\_ the rack and got \_\_\_ the train. 3. She got \_\_\_ the car and went \_\_\_ the club. 4. The president arrived \_\_\_ the airport \_\_\_ ten minutes' time before the flight. He quickly got \_\_\_ the plane and some minutes later the plane took \_\_\_\_. 5. Get \_\_\_ the bus. It will take you \_\_\_  
 ,,the Green Park. 6. I haven't heard \_\_\_ him for ages. He went \_\_\_ Canada two years ago, but I don't know if he is, \_\_\_ Canada now or somewhere else. 7. When he came \_\_\_ home, he took \_\_\_ his coat, hang it \_\_\_ the hook and sat \_\_\_ the armchair. 8. A lot of tourists \_\_\_ different countries arrive \_\_\_ Moscow every year. 9. He's never been \_\_\_ any foreign country. 10. Go \_\_\_ the mirror and have a look \_\_\_ yourself. 11. Welcome \_\_\_ Egypt! A flight \_\_\_ this wonderful country will take you about four hours. 12. A sparrow flew \_\_\_ the room through a window. 13. What time does this train get \_\_\_ Scotland? — It arrives \_\_\_ Glasgow at 10.25 p.m. 14. When you leave the building, turn \_\_\_ the left \_\_\_ the High Street. 15. Take the hat \_\_\_ the boy. Don't you see what he is doing with it?

**Exercise 285.**

*Fill in the blanks with:*

*A down, up, under, below, over, above*

1. Why are you so late? — Our car stuck \_\_\_ the bridge. 2. You are cold. Put this plaid \_\_\_ your knees. 3. It seems to me that she is \_\_\_ twenty-one. 4. There is nothing new \_\_\_ the sun. 5. The branch hit me just \_\_\_ the elbow. 6. Climb \_\_\_ at once! You may fall! 7. My house is \_\_\_ the street, on the hill, and my brother lives \_\_\_ the street, by the river. 8. We are on the second floor in the dining room now. \_\_\_ it there used to be a bedroom of the countess and \_\_\_ it you can see the famous orangery which has been carefully kept for two centuries already.

*B before, in front of, behind, at the back, opposite*

1. She likes to stand \_\_\_ the mirror looking at herself. 2. I like this cottage very much. There is a lawn \_\_\_ the house and \_\_\_ there is a garden. 3. You should return \_\_\_ sunset. 4. You've come the last. You are \_\_\_ me in the queue. 5. At lunch she was sitting \_\_\_ me, so I couldn't help looking at her. 6. If you don't want to go here, you may use another exit \_\_\_\_. 7. I want to take your photograph \_\_\_ our new jeep. 8. You'll find the church easily. There is a cinema \_\_\_ it on the other side of the road.

*C along, through, across, past*

1. Our cottage is rather far. You should drive \_\_\_ the church, \_\_\_ a small wood, then \_\_\_ the river (there is a wooden bridge) and finally \_\_\_ the wide road. Our house is by this road. 2. Paul is a good swimmer. He can swim \_\_\_ the river. 3. She went \_\_\_ me without saying a word.  
 4. The burglar got into the house \_\_\_ an open window. 5. He ran \_\_\_ the lawn and came up to the French window. 6. They went \_\_\_ the bank of the river talking loudly. 7. Oil flows \_\_\_ a pipeline. 8. When she was going \_\_\_ the jewellery shop, her attention was attracted by a necklace in the shop window.



*D among, between*

1. Differences in pronunciation \_\_\_ British English and American English are numerous. 2. For her there is not much choice \_\_\_ Paul and Nick. 3. She could see him \_\_\_ people in the crowd. 4. You may divide this money \_\_\_ you both. 5. There is an oak tree \_\_\_ birches and pines near my house. 6. Tom is the smartest \_\_\_ the other students. 7. There has always been a tough competition \_\_\_ Coca-Cola and Pepsi. 8. Harvard University comes first \_\_\_ the other universities of the USA. 9. \_\_\_ you and me. she is a wicked old gossip.

*E like, as*

1. Is he a millionaire? He spends money \_\_\_ a sheikh. 2. People \_\_\_ the Pitts always fail us. 3. \_\_\_ an economist, I can't agree to it. 4. He broke my knife, he used it \_\_\_ a tin opener. 5. She is more \_\_\_ her father than her mother. 6. I had waited so long for it, it was \_\_\_ a dream. 7. I tried to work \_\_\_ a cabin boy. 8. What has happened to John? He is playing \_\_\_ a beginner. 9. \_\_\_ the weather is bad (it looks \_\_\_ rain), let's stay at home. 10. \_\_\_ a newcomer, he couldn't take part in the debate.

**Exercise 286.**

*Choose the right variant.*

1. He is a wicked boy. I'm sure he did it (by/on) purpose. 2. She shouted (at/to) me that I was wanted (on/to) the phone. 3. Take a pen. You can't sign contracts (by/in) pencil. 4. The voyage was tiring. The sea was rough and we had to be (in/at) sea more than a fortnight. 5. He lives (at/on) a farm somewhere in Texas. 6. Put your signature (on/at) the bottom of the page. Don't write (at/in) the middle, put it (at/on) the right. 7. She made this sweater herself (at/by) hand. 8. He threw an egg (to/at) the speaker. It hit him (on/to) the shoulder. 9. The car that was going (with/at) the speed of 70 miles per hour braked (on/at) the traffic lights. 10. The participants of Greenpeace rally were standing (by/in) a line (in front of/before) the house of the mayor. 11. He was (on/at) work (before/until) 3 o'clock yesterday. 12. He was sent (in/to) prison for shoplifting (at/by) the age of seventeen. 13. (In/On) the whole, I liked our journey. But next year I'd like to go (to/on) a cruise. 14. She is not (by/on) the phone in the country. — Why won't she buy a mobile telephone? It is so convenient. — Her salary's decreased (on/by) two hundred dollars this year and she can't afford it. 15. (From/In) my opinion, she must go (to/on) a diet.

**Exercise 287.**

*Fill in the blanks with the appropriate pre-positions where necessary.*

1. I got lost \_\_\_ Mike's house! I went \_\_\_ my bedroom, went \_\_\_ some stairs, walked \_\_\_ a corridor, came \_\_\_ the lounge, walked \_\_\_ an arch, went \_\_\_ some stairs and \_\_\_ the end I found myself \_\_\_ my bedroom again. 2. Do you know that Alice is \_\_\_ love \_\_\_ Pete? 3. While you dress \_\_\_ dinner, I'll go \_\_\_ the shop \_\_\_ the road. I'll be \_\_\_ time. 4. The news \_\_\_ the accident came \_\_\_ a great shock \_\_\_ him. 5. Let's look at my school photo. Can you recognise me \_\_\_ it? — I think you are \_\_\_ left corner. — No, you

are mistaken. I am \_\_\_ the back \_\_\_ the last row. 6. \_\_\_ the Middle Ages London was rather a big city. In the 16<sup>th</sup> century ( \_\_\_ the time of Shakespeare) it became a prosperous capital. 7. Sit \_\_\_ the armchair and write your name \_\_\_ block letters \_\_\_ the top of the page. Write all dates \_\_\_ words, not \_\_\_ figures. 8. Sicily is an island \_\_\_ the coast \_\_\_ Italy. 9. I am afraid, I won't be able to find the theatre. — Oh, our town is rather small and you'll find it easily. Go \_\_\_ bus till Victoria Station. Turn right \_\_\_ the square. \_\_\_ the theatre there are two palms, and \_\_\_ the theatre there is a swimming pool. \_\_\_ the theatre there is a coffee bar. 10. The typist sits \_\_\_ the chair, with a lamp \_\_\_ her. 11. You didn't do it \_\_\_ mistake! You did it \_\_\_ purpose! 12. After the accident I had to go \_\_\_ hospital \_\_\_ a while. I was \_\_\_ hospital \_\_\_ four days, and then spent another week \_\_\_ bed \_\_\_ home. 13. \_\_\_ the end of the day, most of my colleagues go straight \_\_\_ home, but I prefer to stroll \_\_\_ the streets \_\_\_ the centre. 14. I quite agree \_\_\_ you that going \_\_\_ air is the quickest and safest means of transport, but I am always airsick \_\_\_ the plane. 15. Do you remember the robber? — Well, he was a man \_\_\_ thirty-five, \_\_\_ thin hair, \_\_\_ dark jeans. He looked \_\_\_ an Italian, and used his magazine \_\_\_ a sort of mask.

### Exercise 288.

*Translate into English.*

1. Он вынул часы из кармана и положил их на стол. 2. Этот поезд останавливается на каждой станции. 3. Во время каникул я побывал в Риме. 4. Он перепрыгнул через забор (fence), прошел через лужайку (lawn) и открыл дверь своим ключом. 5. Так как большинство домов в Лондоне в XVII веке было построено из дерева, они все сгорели во время пожара, который длился три дня. 6. Вор (thief) проник в дом через окно, вынул драгоценности (jewelry) из сейфа, сорвал картину со стены, а затем вышел через дверь. 7. Я люблю путешествовать на велосипеде. В прошлом году я объехал всю Грецию на моем старом велосипеде. 8. Я случайно вскрыла ваше письмо. 9. Ирландское море находится между Ирландией и Великобританией. 10. Он придет домой на рождественские праздники. В Рождество все дети приезжают к родителям.

### Noun / Verb / Adjective + Preposition

### Exercise 289.

*Fill in the prepositions.*

1. Have you found the solution \_\_\_ the problem? 2. The demand \_\_\_ the Japanese goods is increasing. 3. The cause \_\_\_ the accident has not been found yet. 4. There is an advantage \_\_\_ going by plane. 5. The reason \_\_\_ my being late is my watch. It has stopped. 6. His reaction \_\_\_ this problem was very strange. 7. The damage \_\_\_ the house made \_\_\_ the fire was terrible. 8. He was struck \_\_\_ the rise \_\_\_ prices. 9. The disadvantage \_\_\_ your offer is routine work. 10. The increase \_\_\_ unemployment is a characteristic feature of a crisis. 11. She was

astonished\_\_\_the decrease\_\_\_pay. 12. We have not received the reply\_\_\_your letter yet. 13. In connection \_\_\_this question we would like to meet you on Thursday. 14. He is in great need\_\_\_money. 15. They sent me a cheque\_\_\_150 pounds. 16. We have reliable contacts \_\_\_this company. 17. The contact\_\_\_them surprises everybody. 18. Could you show me the photograph\_\_\_ this place? 19. The key\_\_\_the problem is unknown. 20. Have you received the invitation\_\_\_the party?

### **Exercise 290.**

*Fill in the prepositions.*

1. I am afraid \_\_\_ losing documents. 2. Are you interested\_\_\_working for us? 3. The children are looking \_\_\_\_\_having a holiday. 4. What are the advantages \_\_\_going there? 5. They are excited\_\_\_going on holiday. 6. He went to work\_\_\_spite\_\_\_feeling bad. 7. I bought an evening dress instead\_\_\_new shoes. 8. I am fed\_\_\_ \_\_\_this film. 9. He is not good\_\_\_math. 10. Tom left \_\_\_finishing dinner. 11. He has succeeded\_\_\_finding a new job. 12. He apologized\_\_\_, me \_\_\_keeping so long. 13. He's always dreamed\_\_\_going to the USA. 14. I insist\_\_\_buying this model of TV. 15. She does not approve\_\_\_smoking. 16. Only you may prevent him \_\_\_doing that .17. We congratulated him\_\_\_passing the exams. 18. I don't feel\_\_\_going anywhere. 19. He is thinking\_\_\_buying a new car. 20. They accused him .\_\_\_robbing the bank. 21. Please forgive me\_\_\_doing this! 22. He suspects him \_\_\_being a liar. 23. They decided\_\_\_going to Brighton because it was raining. 24. I disapprove\_\_\_going there. 25. I prefer cycling \_\_\_driving.

### **Exercise 291.**

*Fill in the prepositions.*

1. His reaction\_\_\_my remark\_\_\_his putting a lot of weight was so painful. I think he should go\_\_\_a diet. 2. Will you pay\_\_\_cheque or\_\_\_cash? — I'll give you "a cheque\_\_\_50 pounds. 3. Look! The house is\_\_\_fire. 3 We should call the fire brigade. 4. The factory is closed today. The workers are\_\_\_strike because their demand \_\_\_increase\_\_\_ pay has not been met. 5. The great advantage\_\_\_being\_\_\_a cruise is that you usually 'have good contacts\_\_\_\_\_ many people. 6. His attitude\_\_\_ her has changed greatly. I think he has fallen\_\_\_love \_\_\_her. 7. \_\_\_my opinion, he has written the test\_\_\_ chance. Instead \_\_\_preparing \_\_\_it he went \_\_\_a tour. 8. She lives\_\_\_a new district and she is not\_\_\_ the phone. 9. What is the reason\_\_\_your doubt? 10. The cause\_\_\_her committing a suicide is not known. 11. He was greatly impressed \_\_\_the exhibition which was famous\_\_\_its beautiful sculptures. 12. His behaviour is similar\_\_\_hers. They are not interested\_\_\_anything. 13, I'm short\_\_\_time, I'm afraid. 14. I hate going\_\_\_ the centre. It is always crowded \_\_\_people. 15. The president is responsible. \_\_\_the policy of the government. 16. They are fond\_\_\_classical music but they are also interested \_\_\_pop music. 17. He was incapable \_\_\_ passing the exam but don't feel sorry\_\_\_him. If he had been keen\_\_\_passing it, he would have studied much. 18. I'm sick and

tired\_\_\_this loud music. Will you turn it\_\_\_, please? 19. His dictation is full\_\_\_mistakes. He is not keen \_\_\_learning German. 20. They are sorry \_\_\_their behaviour. They drank too much yesterday.

### **Exercise 292.**

*Translate the following sentences into English using prepositions and adverbial particles.*

1. Я только что получил приглашение на их свадьбу (wedding). 2. Причина несчастного случая выясняется (investigate). 3. Это не решение проблемы. 4. Я не могу придумать ответ на его письмо. 5. На эти товары небольшой спрос. 6. Существует много недостатков и преимуществ, если у тебя есть машина. 7. Недостатком его пребывания в США было то, что он не знал английского языка. 8. Несмотря на наши разногласия (difficulties), его отношение ко мне не изменилось. 9. Я не вижу связи между этими двумя событиями (event). 10. Все рассмеялись, услышав причину его опоздания. 11. За последние несколько лет произошел резкий рост цен. 12. Ущерб, нанесенный городу наводнением (flood), был значительным. 13. Снижение уровня жизни (living standards) является характерной чертой (feature) любого кризиса. 14. Этот бизнесмен дал чек на благотворительные цели (charity). 15. Две компании совершенно независимы, между ними нет никакой связи.

## 5. READING

**Read the text and be able to do the tasks below.**

### THE KING AND THE PAINTER

There was a king who thought he could paint very well. His pictures were very bad but the people to whom he showed them were afraid to tell him the truth. They all said that his pictures were wonderful and they liked them very much.

One day the king showed his pictures to a great painter who lived in his country and said, "I'd like to know what you think of my pictures. Do you like them?"

The painter looked at the king's pictures and said, "My king, I believe that your pictures are bad and you will never be a good artist."

The king got very angry and sent the painter to prison. Two years had passed and the king wanted to see the painter again.

"I was angry with you," he said, "because you didn't like my pictures. Now you're a free man again and I am your friend." The king talked with the painter and invited him for dinner. The dinner was wonderful. And they enjoyed it very much.

After dinner the king showed his pictures to the painter again and asked, "Well, how do you like them now?" The painter turned to a soldier who was standing behind him and said, "Take me back to prison."

**A Write down whether the following statements are true or false.**

1. The king was proud of his pictures.
2. The painter told the king the truth.
3. Some years later the king became a good painter.

**B Answer the following questions.**

1. Why were people afraid to tell the King the truth about his pictures?
2. What happened to the great painter who told them the truth?
3. Did the painter change his mind when he met the king two years later?

**Read the text and be able to do the tasks below.**

### AESOP AND THE TRAVELLER

Aesop was a very clever man who lived hundreds of years ago in Greece. He wrote many fine stories. He was well-known as a man who was fond of jokes. One day, as he was enjoying a walk, he met a traveller, who greeted him and said, "Kindman, can you tell me how soon I shall get to town?"

"Go," Aesop answered. "I know I must go," protested the traveller, "but I should like you to tell me how soon I shall get to town."

"Go," Aesop said again angrily.

"This man must be mad," the traveller thought and went on.

After he had gone some distance, Aesop shouted after him. "You will get to town in two hours." The traveller turned round in surprise. "Why didn't you tell

me that before?" he asked. "How could I have told that before?" answered Aesop. "I did not know how fast you could walk."

**A Write down whether the following statements are true or false.**

1. Aesop was a clever man who lived in Italy.
2. He was fond of walking.
3. The traveller did not know how quickly he would get to town.
4. Aesop told him at once how soon he would get to town.

**B Answer the following questions.**

1. What did Aesop ask the traveller to do?
2. Did the traveller understand him?
3. When did Aesop give him his answer?
4. Why did he not do it before?

**Read the text and be able to do the tasks below.**

### **A JOKE**

Everyone has read stories about Sherlock Holmes, who was a famous detective. He was the most famous detective of all time. The author of all the stories was Sir Arthur Conan Doyle. Once Sir Arthur arrived in Paris. He took a cab and asked the cabman to take him to a big hotel, where he was going to spend the night. The cabman brought him to the hotel. When he received his fare he said, "Thank you very much,

Sir Arthur Conan Doyle." Sir Arthur was surprised, "How do you know who I am?" he asked. "Well, sir, I read in the newspapers yesterday that you were coming to Paris from the South of France. The train, by which you arrived, came from the South of France. Your hat and your clothes told me that you were English. I put all together and

guessed at once that you were Sir Arthur Conan Doyle."

"That is wonderful," said Sir Arthur. "With so few facts you were really able to know me." "Of course," said the taxi driver, "your name was on both of your travelling bags. That also helped." The cabman played a joke on Conan Doyle.

**A Write down whether the following statements are true or false.**

1. Sherlock Holmes is a famous writer of detective stories.
2. Once Sir Arthur Conan Doyle came to Paris.
3. The cabman recognized him at once.
4. He could not explain why he had recognized him.
5. He knew that his passenger was a famous writer because he had seen him before.

**B Answer the following questions.**

1. Why did Sir Arthur Conan Doyle take a cab?
2. How did the taxi-driver explain the fact that he knew his passenger's name?
3. Did Sir Arthur Conan Doyle believe him?
4. What was the real reason for the cabman's knowledge?

5. Why did the cabman decide to play a joke on the famous writer?

**Read the text and do the tasks below.**

### **PATRIDGE'S ALMANAC**

Many years ago there lived a man in London whose name was Patridge. A lot of people knew him because he wrote almanacs where he predicted the weather for each day of the year. Once he decided to visit one of his friends who lived in the country.

He left London early in the morning and in a few hours he stopped at a small hotel to have dinner and rest a little. As he wanted to see his friend he didn't stay in the hotel for a long time. When he was ready to go, the receptionist said to him, "Don't go out! It will rain." "No, I am sure it will not," said Patridge and left the hotel.

But very soon it began to rain. "How did the receptionist know it?" he thought. "I must return and ask him. It will help me to write my almanac."

The receptionist met him at the hotel. Patridge gave him some money and asked him, "How can you predict the weather so well?" "Oh, we have Patridge's almanac, and when this Patridge says that the weather will be fine we always know that it will

rain. Today it is July 20th, and the almanac says, "Fine weather, no rain."

**A Write down whether the following statements are true or false.**

1. Mr Patridge was popular because of his almanac.
2. One day he decided to find new material for his book.
3. The receptionist recognized him.
4. Mr Patridge decided to speak with the receptionist because he thought that this talk would help him.

**B Answer the following questions.**

1. Why did a lot of people know Mr Patridge?
2. Why did he decide to go to the country one day?
3. How long was he going to stay at the hotel?
4. Why did the receptionist recommend him not to leave the hotel?
5. How could the receptionist predict the weather so well?

**Read the text and do the tasks.**

### **ENGLISH IS A CONFUSING LANGUAGE**

When I arrived in England, I could not speak a word of English, so I decided to take some lessons. My teacher told me, "It is necessary to study English very well as English is a confusing language."

At first I didn't understand him. But some time later I understood what he meant. I remembered an evening I had spent in a bar in my hotel. I decided to speak English to the barman. I ordered, "A bear, please." The barman could not believe his ears. He thought for a moment and then said, "Listen to me, young man, you

are in a bar, not in a Zoo." I didn't understand him but I saw he wasn't pleased. A friendly

Englishman saved me and ordered a beer for me. He invited me to his table. He was very patriotic and talked about the Queen. I didn't understand half of what he had said, but I decided to please him. "God shave the Queen," I said. He stood up, looked at me and walked away without saying a word. When I think of that day now I see how right my teacher of English was.

**A Write down whether the following statements are true or false.**

1. The author could not speak English when he arrived.
2. The author understood what the word "confusing" meant.
3. The barman was angry because he understood him correctly.
4. A friend decided to help him.
5. He was friendly at first.
6. The young man left the author of the story because he was angry with him.

**B Answer the following questions.**

1. Why did the author of the story decide to take lessons of English?
2. Why did the friendly Englishman decide to help the author of the story?
3. Why did he leave angrily?
4. Did the author of the story understand the meaning of the word "confusing"?
5. What does it mean?

**Read the text and do the tasks below.**

### **A Trip by Plane**

An American farmer wanted to make an air trip. There was an airport close to his farm. So one morning he came there to ask if he could make an air trip.

"You see," he said to one of the pilots, "I have never flown before, but I would like to." The pilot told him that the price of the trip was 10 dollars for a ten-minute trip. "Oh, it's a dollar a minute," the farmer said. "Can't you reduce the price?" The pilot thought for a minute and then said, "I won't take any money if you don't say a word during the whole trip." The farmer agreed. "By the way," said the pilot, "you may take your wife too." The farmer was happy. The next day at three o'clock the farmer and his wife arrived at the airport.

Soon they were up in the air. The plane flew at a high speed, it went up and down very quickly, but the passengers didn't say a word.

"You are brave people," said the pilot. "I thought you would be afraid to fly."

"Well," said the farmer, "I am glad, I will not have to pay for the trip, as I didn't have to say a word, but I wanted to speak to you when my wife fell out of the plane."

**A Write down whether the following statements are true or false.**

1. The farmer didn't like the price of the trip.
2. The farmer decided to take his wife because it could make the price of the trip less.
3. The passengers kept silent when they were in the air.



4. The farmer's wife was quite well after the trip.

**B Answer the following questions.**

1. What kind of trip did the farmer want to make?
2. Did he find the trip cheap or expensive?
3. On what condition did the pilot agree to change the price of the trip?
4. Who joined the farmer?
5. Did the farmer pay for the trip?
6. What happened to his wife in the air?

**Read the text and do the tasks below.**

**A Storm at Sea**

There was a performance at a London theatre in which there was a storm at sea. Some boys were shouting and running under a large piece of green cloth to make that storm. Each boy received a shilling a night for his work. People enjoyed the performance and a lot of people visited the theatre when the performance was on. But the theatre director wanted to make still more money from these performances and he decided to make the boys' pay lower. So he said that he would pay not a shilling but a sixpence for their work. Such conditions didn't suit the boys and they decided not to accept them. So during the next performance, when the storm was to begin the boys began to shout but they were not running under the cloth. So nobody could see any storm at sea. The theatre director ran to them, looked under the cloth and asked, "What's the matter? Why aren't you making any storm?" One of the boys asked him, "Do you want a sixpence or a shilling storm?" "All right, all right," the director said, "I'll give you a shilling a night, only give me a good storm." The storm began, and everybody thought that they had never seen a better storm before.

**A Write down whether the following statements are true or false.**

1. The boys were shouting under a small carpet.
2. The theatre director decided to lower the payment because the performance was not successful.
3. The boys only shouted after the payment became lower.
4. The boys did it because they were tired.
5. The theatre director asked them to do their best.

**B Answer the following questions.**

1. Where was the performance on?
2. What did the boys do during the performance?
3. Why did they stop doing what they had been asked?
4. Why was the performance successful again?

**Read the text and do the tasks below.**

### **Economy is the Best Policy**

A young mother believed that it was very wrong to waste any food when there were so many hungry people in the world. One evening, she was giving her small

daughter her tea before putting her to bed. First she gave her a slice of fresh brown

bread and butter, but the child said that she did not want it like that — she asked for

some jam on her bread as well.

Her mother looked at her for a few seconds and then said, "When I was a small girl like you Lucy, I was always given either bread and butter, or bread and jam, but

never bread with butter and jam."

Lucy looked at her mother for a few moments with pity in her eyes and then said to her kindly, "Aren't you pleased that you've come to live with us now?"

**A Write down whether the following statements are true or false.**

1. A young mother thought that people should think more about the poor.
2. The child wanted to have tea and jam.
3. Lucy felt sorry for her mother.

**B Answer the following questions.**

1. What did a young mother think about wasting food?
2. What did she want her daughter to have?
3. What did the daughter mean by her last sentence?
4. Did she agree with her mother?

**Read the text and do the tasks below.**

### **WHAT IS MORE USEFUL**

It happened once when a trolley-bus, a car and a bicycle met at the red light. As they were waiting for the green light, they began to argue.

The Car was the first to speak. He said to the bicycle, "I can't understand why people are using you! You are so slow. Do you know that people started travelling by

cars about a hundred years ago: in 1885. I'm very fast, I can carry not one man, as you

do, but five. Anybody can see that I am more useful than you."

"It depends on when and where," said the small bicycle.

Then the trolley-bus spoke. "I am better and more useful than you," he said to the

car. "You can take only five people, but I can take more. It's quite clear to anybody

that I am more useful than you."

"It depends on when and where," said the small bicycle again.

At that moment they saw a green light and moved on to see which of them was the fastest. Of course the bicycle was the slowest and the trolley-bus could not leave

the city. The car left the city and was moving very fast. But soon it came to the place

where there was a bridge over the river.

The car could not cross it as the bridge was very bad. So it had to take another road. And when, at last, it came to a village on the other side of the river, it saw that

the bicycle was waiting for it. "Why," said the car, "how did you cross the river?"

"Well," said the bicycle, "there was a little passage on the bridge just wide enough

for me to cross the river. And so here I am. Do you remember what I said? It depends

on when and where. You see now that I was right."

**A Write down whether the following statements are true or false.**

1. The car thought that the bicycle was not useful at all.
2. It thought that it was more useful because it was very fast.
3. The bicycle agreed with it.
4. The trolley-bus thought that it was the most useful of all.
5. When the green light was on the trolley-bus was the fastest.
6. When the car came to the village it saw the bicycle there.

**B Answer the following questions.**

1. When did people start using cars?
2. Why did the car think that the bicycle wasn't useful?
3. Why did the trolley-bus think that it was more useful than others?
4. Why couldn't the car cross the river?
5. Why was the bicycle right when it said, "It depends on when and where"?

**Read the text and do the tasks below.**

### **A Wonderful Discovery**

Sarah had a son of ten, who was called Jack. He did not like studying, but loved watching television. Sarah used to drive to school at half past four in the afternoon,

bring Jack back home and give him some tea, but as soon as he got home, he always rushed to the television set and turned it on. "Haven't you got any homework, Jack?"

his mother always asked him as she began to make tea.

"Eh? Oh, yes, I have got a little," he used to answer. "I'll do it later when there's nothing interesting on television."

At first Sarah had allowed Jack to watch television instead of starting his homework first, but soon she discovered that lie never had a little homework — it was

always a great deal — and that there was never a time when there was nothing interesting on television, so that after putting off doing his homework for a couple of

hours, Jack was too tired to do his homework properly, if at all.

Sarah then decided to make him do it first. This was always a battle, and often when Jack obeyed his mother, he did his work quickly and carelessly as he wanted to

finish it quickly and get back to his beloved television.

The result was the same as when he left his homework until last; bad work, which

he was punished for the next day at school by getting low marks, either because his

homework was full of mistakes, or because he did not know the work he was supposed to have prepared the night before.

One evening Jack's science homework was about famous inventors like Thomas Edison, who made important discoveries and inventions in the field of electricity.

When he had homework that consisted of learning facts, his mother began to test him

when he finished, to try to make sure that he had really done the work properly and

not left anything out, and this is what she did this time. She did not let him stop until

she was sure that he knew what was in his book.

But this time, it was less of a battle than usual to make Jack sit down and go over

what he had learnt carefully, because it had strong connection with television.

In class the next day, the teacher said to Jack, "What are some of the things that Thomas Edison did for science?"

"Well," Jack answered happily, "first of all, if it were not for Edison, we'd all be watching television by candlelight."

**A Write down whether the following statements are true or false.**

1. Jack had a lot of homework.
2. He did not do his homework well because he was not a clever boy.

3. Jack's mother made him do his homework.
4. Jack enjoyed doing his homework about Thomas Edison.

**B Answer the following questions.**

1. Was there sometimes nothing interesting on television for Jack?
2. Were Jack's results better when his mother made him do his homework?
3. What did Jack's mother do to stop him being punished at school?
4. Why was Jack's answer funny?

**Read the magazine article and do the tasks below.**

Every good climber wants to climb mountain Everest, 8, 848 metres above the sea

level, the highest mountain in the world. It stands between Nepal and Tibet, in the

Himalayas. It is, in fact, quite a "young" mountain — only about two million years

old. The Tibetans call it Chomolungma, the "Mother of the World".

Only just over 600 people have ever climbed to the top of Everest. You cannot climb the mountain without special permission from the government of Nepal; you

can only climb it in May or October every year; you must have a booking for your

expedition — and at the moment there are no more bookings for the next ten years!

The expeditions which have climbed Everest have all used tents, oxygen bottles and other climbing equipment. Many expeditions have left their old equipment behind

them — empty oxygen bottles, old food containers, etc — so there is now a serious

litter problem high up on the mountain.

The government of Nepal is now trying to clean up the mountain. In May 1993 they gave permission to a team of young Americans to climb the mountain ... but they

asked them to bring back the litter on their way down again. The expedition brought

down 2, 850 kilos of litter from the highest slopes of the mountain. This was the start

of a plan to clear all the litter from Mountain Everest.

**A Write down whether the following statements are true or false.**

1. Everest is less than 1, 100 metres high.
2. It is in the Alps.
3. 500 people have climbed it.
4. People can climb it from May to October.

**B Answer the following questions.**

1. Can you book an expedition to Everest now?  
.....
2. Why is there a serious litter problem?  
.....
3. How did the government start to exercise their programme?

**Read the text and do the tasks below.**

Purcell was a small man. He owned a pet shop. He sold cats, dogs, monkeys and birds. Each morning when he completed the routine of opening his shop, he sat down

on a high stool behind the counter and read a morning newspaper.

It was a cold rainy day. Mr Purcell was reading a newspaper as usual when a customer appeared in the shop and said that he wanted something in a cage.

"Something in a cage?" Mr Purcell was a bit confused. "You mean some sort of pet?"

"I mean what I said!" answered the man. "Something in a cage. Something alive that is in a cage."

"I see," said the shopkeeper not sure that he did.

He started to offer different pets, but it seemed that the price was too big for the customer. At last he decided to have two white doves for five dollars. Mr Purcell handed the cage to him.

"Listen," the man said suddenly. "How long do you think it took me to make those five dollars?"

Mr Purcell was in a state of panic, but he asked, "Why, how long?"

The customer laughed. "Ten years! I've spent ten years in jail. Ten years! Fifty cents a year!" He took his cage and left the shop. Mr Purcell came up to the shop window to look at the customer who was holding the cage and looking at his purchase.

Then he opened the cage and took the birds out. Soon they disappeared in the sky.

**A Write down whether the following statements are true or false.**

1. Mr Purcell sold cats, dogs, horses and birds.
2. Each morning he had a cup of coffee.
3. The customer rejected all the offers because he could not afford the price.
4. He said that he had made those five dollars in jail.

**B Answer the following questions.**

1. Why was Mr Purcell surprised when he heard what the customer wanted?  
.....
2. Why did he choose the doves?  
.....
3. Why did he let them out?  
.....

**Read the text and do the tasks below.**

Greenville was a small town in the middle of England. Most of it was full of houses and shops, but in the middle of the town there was a small park, which contained, among other things, a playground for small children. The park had always been closed at six every evening, and this had meant that the playground closed at that time too, but now the town council was discussing whether, in the summer, the playground should be left open till later.

There was a lot of discussion about this among the members of the town council. A few of them thought that children should not be encouraged to stay out late in the evenings; others said that it was healthy for children to have a change from television to get some fresh air, and to be able to play in the playground instead of perhaps doing things that were either dangerous or harmful. At last one of the council members who was a woman, asked, "Have any of you ever gone to the playground on a summer evening? If you had, you would have seen that there are groups of children playing there after six every evening."

"But the playground isn't open then!" others cried.

"I know," the woman answered, "but it's no mystery that there are plenty of small holes in the fence round the playground through which the children can climb. And when they have to get in that way, they're much more eager to do so than if the gates are open.

It's much more exciting for them to do things they think are forbidden, you see, and it does no harm, does it?"

The other members of the town council laughed, and they all agreed that the gates should continue to be closed at six for the children's sake, so as not to spoil their fun.

**A Write down whether the following statements are true or false.**

1. There were a lot of houses and shops in the park of Greenville.
2. The town council was thinking of closing the park before six.
3. Some members did not want to change the time.

4. Others wanted the park to remain open to encourage children to stop going out.

**B Answer the following questions.**

1. At what time had one member seen children playing in the playground?  
.....

2. How had they got in?  
.....

3. Why was it a good thing?  
.....

4. Why did the town council agree to continue closing the park at six?

**Read the text and do the tasks below.**

This happened more than fifty years ago, in a little American town called Springfield. The newspaper "The Springfield Voice" had a very difficult life. The

newspaper hadn't enough money and could not pay its workers. But it had one difficulty that was even worse. Whenever some interesting news appeared in "The

Springfield Voice", the rest of the newspapers in the town at once published the same

news as their own. At last "The Springfield Voice" decided to teach their enemies a lesson.

In the morning, April 1, "The Springfield Voice" published the news that a coffee

king whose name was Lirpa Loof had come from abroad and was going to visit Springfield. Of course, this was tremendous news in such a little town. That same

afternoon all the other newspapers in the town wrote about Mr Lirpa Loof. One of the

newspapers published an interview with the rich businessman, another newspaper told

its readers that Mr Lirpa Loof had had a meeting with the businessmen of the town,

who were planning to buy coffee from him.

The next day, April 2, "The Springfield Voice" wrote: "Of course, we are proud that the other newspapers believed our story about the rich foreign businessman Lirpa

Loof. But they must not forget what the date was yesterday. Read the first, then the

second word — Lirpa Loof — from the end to the beginning and you will see why

they must not forget that date."

**A Write down whether the following statements are true or false.**



1. It happened fifteen years ago in America.
2. The newspaper had financial problems.
3. The newspaper wrote about a coffee king who came to Springfield.
4. Other newspapers published information about him too.

**B Answer the following questions.**

1. Why was the newspaper "The Springfield Voice" in a difficult situation?
2. Why did other newspapers publish information about the coffee king?
3. What is the message of the story?

**Read the text and do the tasks below.**

A company in Japan is selling a new drink. Their new drink is a powerful mixture of powered ginseng root, a fungus from the skin of caterpillars and reptile's blood. This strange drink, people say, is helping Chinese women athletes to win gold medals at international athletics meetings. The Japanese firm says that this mixture can do wonderful things for ordinary people too. Mr Ma Junwen is the trainer of the Chinese women's athletics team. He created the recipe for this peculiar cocktail of roots and fungus and blood specially for the team. His runners train in the mountains of central China. They run 30 or 40 kilometres every day, so they are all very strong runners. But they all drink Ma's cocktail every day too ... and they are winning more medals nowadays than they did before. And Mr Ma is trying to market his odd mixture through the company in Japan. People in Japan know about Ma's runners and they are rushing to buy a bottle of his amazing drink. So Mr Ma is winning, too, not only runners. Before he invented his drink, he was not a rich man, but now he is making a lot of money from the drink, and people in Japan love it!

**A Write down whether the following sentences are true or false.**

1. Mr Ma is helping Japanese sportswomen.
2. This drink is a mixture consisting of different ingredients.
3. This mixture was created for sale.
4. A Japanese company is now selling the drink in China.

**B Answer the following questions.**

1. Who is drinking Ma's mixture nowadays In Japan?
2. Who usually drinks it In China?

3. How many medals are Chinese women runners winning nowadays, with the help of Mr Ma's drink?
4. Why is Mr Ma winning?

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

**The good and bad: Studies look at the influence of social media on teens**

Dr. Drew Pate is an expert on teenagers. He helps teens who feel sad or worried. He also speaks with their parents.

One thing comes up all the time, Dr. Pate says. People are worried about sites like Instagram, Facebook or Snapchat. They wonder if they are bad for teens. Such sites are known as social media. They let people connect through messages and posts. Many parents say their children are always on social media. They wonder if that is healthy.

**Too Much Use Can Be Bad For Teenagers**

Teenagers say the sites often make them unhappy. For example, they worry about not looking good in photos. They wonder why their friends seem so much happier than them.

Scientists are trying to find out if social media can be bad for teens. So far, the picture is unclear.

Studies have shown that social media use has a bad effect on some young people. It can cause worrying and feelings of depression. It can also make it hard to fall asleep.

**Not Healthy For Some Teens, Experts Say**

Depression is like sadness. It is more serious than sadness, though. When someone is depressed, they have trouble feeling happy. They might feel unable to control their mood. They might have trouble sleeping.

Depression is often not caused by social media. It is a health problem having to do with the brain. Still, social media can make depression worse.

For example, scientists say social media can give teens a poor body image. People with a poor body image worry about how they look all the time. This is unhealthy.

**Comparing Yourself To Others On Social Media Sites**

The body-image problem is greatest for teen girls. They see endless photos of perfect bodies on sites like Instagram and Snapchat. Many of the photos are digitally changed. They make people look perfect. The images are fake, though. No one is perfect in real life. Teen girls can feel ugly in comparison.

Photos are not the only problem. Words can be a problem too, said Dr. Pate.

Teens may think comments are about them when they aren't. Or, they may not realize someone is only joking. People can get into online fights.

Some teens spend way too much time on social media. They end up missing sleep. Their schoolwork can slip. All that can cause worry or depression.

## **Social Media Can Be Useful Too**

Social media use can also help teens, though, some scientists say. It can give them a place to talk about their problems. It can let them just be themselves.

For some teens, social media use causes too many problems, Dr. Pate said. They may need to give it up completely.

Some teens just need to spend less time on the sites. They may also need to stick to a small group of friends. Other teens use social media well. For them, the sites are simply fun.

It's different for every teen, Dr. Pate said.

1. Read the section "Too Much Use Can Be Bad For Teenagers."

What information do you get from this section?

- A) examples of what depression feels like
- B) reasons why people seem happy on social media
- C) social media sites that teens like to use
- D) problems that social media can cause

2. Read the section "Comparing Yourself To Others On Social Media Sites."

Which paragraph explains that what is seen on social media is NOT always real?

3. Which sentence from the article BEST states its MAIN idea?

- A) Many parents say their children are always on social media.
- B) Scientists are trying to find out if social media can be bad for teens.
- C) People with a poor body image worry about how they look all the time.
- D) It can give them a place to talk about their problems.

4. What is the section "Social Media Can Be Useful Too" MOSTLY about?

- A) how teens should use social media in a way that is right for them
- B) how social media can cause many problems for teens
- C) how teens have a lot of problems to talk about on social media
- D) how social media can be very fun for teens

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. The program of refresher courses for teachers of general education schools of the Republic of Kazakhstan (third basic level). Astana - www.cpm.kz (5.11.2012)
2. Refresher courses 06/06/2012 Source: testent.ru- ya-student.kz ›News› 1574/114536 (November 5, 2012)
3. The program of refresher courses for teachers of general education schools of the Republic of Kazakhstan “Teacher’s Guide” (third basic level).
4. Sokolova L.A. The reflective component of activity as a necessary condition for the development of a teacher and students // Foreign languages at school. ” Scientific and methodical journal. / Ch. ed. N.P. Kamenskaya №1.2005 p.19-26.
5. Wexler S.I. The development of critical thinking of high school students in the learning process. Author. diss. Cand. ped. Sciences.- Kiev, 1974.
6. Mazhikeev T.M. The teacher of the new formation as a great teacher. Source: teacher-almaty.clan.su ›publ / 28-1-0-30 (03/03/2012)
7. Vasuta I. Using the techniques of developing critical thinking in the literature classes // Literature. - 2005.- № 3.- P. 27.
8. Genike E.A., Trifonova E.A. The development of critical thinking (basic model). Prince 1.- M. : BONFI, 2002.
9. A.A. Krasnoborova. Criterion assessment at school. Perm, 2010. Methodical manuals of JSC Nazarbayev Intellectual Schools on criteria-based assessment.
10. Ilyin E.P. Motivation and motive: theory and methods of study. Kiev 1998
11. Bozhovich L.I. The problem of the development of the motivational sphere of the child. The study of the motivation of the behavior of children and teenagers. Moscow 1972.
12. Criterion assessment at the lessons of physical culture. Library "First of September".
13. L. Romanova English Practice Grammar 2000 Airis

Aikenova Ryskeldy Aikenovna,  
Rustimova Saltanat Galimzhanovna,  
Kuntubaeva Gulnar Orazbekovna